

UM1718 User manual

STM32CubeMX for STM32 configuration and initialization C code generation

Introduction

STM32CubeMX is a graphical tool for 32-bit ARM[®] Cortex[®] STM32 microcontrollers. It is part of STMCube[™] initiative (see *Section 1*) and is available either as a standalone application or as an Eclipse plug-in for integration in Integrated Development Environments (IDEs).

STM32CubeMX has the following key features:

- Easy microcontroller selection covering whole STM32 portfolio
- Board selection from a list of STMicroelectronics boards
- Easy microcontroller configuration (pins, clock tree, peripherals, middleware) and generation of the corresponding initialization C code
- Easy switching to another microcontroller belonging to the same series by importing a previously-saved configuration to a new MCU project
- Easy exporting of current configuration to a compatible MCU
- Generation of configuration reports
- Generation of embedded C projects for a selection of integrated development environment tool chains. STM32CubeMX projects include the generated initialization C code, MISRA 2004 compliant STM32 HAL drivers, the middleware stacks required for the user configuration, and all the relevant files for opening and building the project in the selected IDE.
- Power consumption calculation for a user-defined application sequence
- Self-updates allowing the user to keep the STM32CubeMX up-to-date
- Download and update of STM32Cube embedded software required for user application development (see Appendix E: STM32Cube embedded software packages for details on STM32Cube embedded software offer)

Although STM32CubeMX offers a user interface and generates a C code compliant with STM32 MCU design and firmware solutions, it is recommended to refer to the product technical documentation for details on actual implementation of microcontroller peripherals and firmware.

The following documents are available from http://www.st.com:

- STM32 microcontroller reference manuals and datasheets
- STM32Cube HAL driver user manuals for STM32F0 (UM1785), STM32F1 (UM1850), STM32F2 (UM1940), STM32F3 (UM1786), STM32F4 (UM1725), STM32F7 (UM1905), STM32L0 (UM1749), STM32L1 (UM1816) and STM32L4 (UM1884).



November 2016

DocID025776 Rev 17

Contents

1	STM3	2Cube	overview	14
2	Gettin	ng start	ed with STM32CubeMX	15
	2.1	Principl	es	15
	2.2	Key fea	tures	17
	2.3	Rules a	nd limitations	18
3	Instal	ling and	d running STM32CubeMX	19
	3.1	System	requirements	19
		3.1.1	Supported operating systems and architectures	. 19
		3.1.2	Memory prerequisites	. 19
		3.1.3	Software requirements	. 19
	3.2	Installin	g/uninstalling STM32CubeMX standalone version	19
		3.2.1	Installing STM32CubeMX standalone version	. 19
		3.2.2	Installing STM32CubeMX from command line	. 20
		3.2.3	Uninstalling STM32CubeMX standalone version	. 23
	3.3	Installin	g STM32CubeMX plug-in version	24
		3.3.1	Downloading STM32CubeMX plug-in installation package	. 24
		3.3.2	Installing STM32CubeMX as an Eclipse IDE plug-in	. 24
		3.3.3	Uninstalling STM32CubeMX as Eclipse IDE plug-in	. 25
	3.4	Launch	ing STM32CubeMX	27
		3.4.1	Running STM32CubeMX as standalone application	. 27
		3.4.2	Running STM32CubeMX in command-line mode	. 27
		3.4.3	Running STM32CubeMX plug-in from Eclipse IDE	. 30
	3.5	Getting	STM32Cube updates	31
		3.5.1	Updater configuration	. 33
		3.5.2	Downloading new libraries	. 36
		3.5.3	Downloading new library patches	. 38
		3.5.4	Removing libraries	. 38
		3.5.5	Checking for updates	. 40
4	STM3	2Cubel	MX User Interface	41
	4.1	Welcon	ne page	41



46
49
. 49
. 50
. 50
. 52
. 53
53
. 53
. 54
54
60
62
. 64
. 67
. 70
71
72
72 72
72 72 . 74
72 72 . 74 . 75
72 72 . 74 . 75 . 78
72 72 74 75 75 80
72 72 . 74 . 75 . 78 . 80 . 81
72 72 74 75 78 80 81 81
72 72 . 74 . 75 . 78 . 80 . 81 . 82 . 88
72 72 74 75 78 80 81 82 88 . 90
72 72 . 74 . 75 . 78 . 80 . 81 . 82 . 88 . 90 . 93
72 72 . 74 . 75 . 80 . 81 . 82 . 88 . 90 . 93 . 99
72 72 . 74 . 75 . 78 . 80 . 81 . 82 . 82 . 88 . 90 . 93 . 99 102
72 72 . 74 . 75 . 78 . 80 . 81 . 82 . 88 . 90 . 93 . 99 102 104
72 72 . 74 . 75 . 80 . 81 . 82 . 88 . 90 . 93 . 99 102 104 112
72 72 . 74 . 75 . 78 . 80 . 81 . 82 . 88 . 90 . 93 . 99 102 104 112 119
72 72 . 74 . 75 . 78 . 80 . 81 . 82 . 88 . 90 . 93 . 99 102 104 112 119 119



		4.13.3	STM32F43x/42x power-over drive feature	25
		4.13.4	Clock tree glossary	27
	4.14	Power	Consumption Calculator view	27
		4.14.1	Building a power consumption sequence	28
		4.14.2	Configuring a step in the power sequence	35
		4.14.3	Managing user-defined power sequence and reviewing results	39
		4.14.4	Power sequence step parameters glossary	42
		4.14.5	Battery glossary	45
5	STM	32Cube	MX C Code generation overview	46
	5.1	STM32	Cube code generation using only HAL drivers	46
	5.2	STM32	$2C_{\rm ubc}$ code concretion using Low Lover drivers 1	10
	5.2	STIVI32		+0
	5.3	Custon		54
		5.3.1	SIM32CubeMX data model for FreeMarker user templates	54
		5.3.2	Saving and selecting user templates	54 55
		5.3.3		55
6	Tuto	rial 1: F	rom pinout to project C code generation	
	using	g an ST	M32F4 MCU	58
	6.1	Creatir	ng a new STM32CubeMX Project1	58
	6.2	Config	uring the MCU pinout	61
	6.3	Saving	the project	62
	6.4	Genera	ating the report	63
	6.5	Config	uring the MCU Clock tree	63
	6.6	Config	uring the MCU initialization parameters	66
		6.6.1	Initial conditions	66
		6.6.2	Configuring the peripherals	67
		6.6.3	Configuring the GPIOs	70
		6.6.4	Configuring the DMAs	71
		6.6.5	Configuring the middleware	72
	6.7	Genera	ating a complete C project 1	75
		6.7.1	Setting project options	75
		6.7.2	Downloading firmware package and generating the C code	77
	6.8	Buildin	g and updating the C code project	82
	6.9	Switch	ing to another MCU	87
			-	

DocID025776 Rev 17



7	Tutor STM3	rial 2 - Example of FatFs on an SD card using 32429I-EVAL evaluation board
8	Tutor to op	rial 3 - Using the Power Consumption Calculator timize the embedded application consumption and more 196
	8.1	Tutorial overview
	8.2	Application example description 197
	8.3	Using the Power Consumption Calculator
		8.3.1 Creating a power sequence
		8.3.2 Optimizing application power consumption
9	Tutor a STI	rial 4 - Example of UART communications with M32L053xx Nucleo board
	9.1	Tutorial overview
	9.2	Creating a new STM32CubeMX project and selecting the Nucleo board
	9.3	Selecting the features from the Pinout view
	9.4	Configuring the MCU clock tree from the Clock Configuration view 212
	9.5	Configuring the peripheral parameters from the Configuration view 213
	9.6	Configuring the project settings and generating the project 216
	9.7	Updating the project with the user application code
	9.8	Compiling and running the project 218
	9.9	Configuring Tera Term software as serial communication client on the PC
10	Tutor comp	rial 5: exporting current project configuration to a patible MCU
11	FAQ	
	11.1	On the Pinout configuration pane, why does STM32CubeMX move some functions when I add a new peripheral mode?
	11.2	How can I manually force a function remapping?
	11.3	Why are some pins highlighted in yellow or in light green in the Chip view? Why cannot I change the function of some pins (when I click some pins, nothing happens)?
	11.4	Why do I get the error "Java 7 update 45' when installing 'Java 7 update 45' or a more recent version of the JRE?



	11.5	Why does the RTC multiplexer remain inactive on the Clock tree view? 22	25
	11.6	How can I select LSE and HSE as clock source and change the frequency?	26
	11.7	Why STM32CubeMX does not allow me to configure PC13, PC14, PC15 and PI8 as outputs when one of them is already configured as an output? 22	26
Appendix	A S	M32CubeMX pin assignment rules	27
	A.1	Block consistency 22	27
	A.2	Block inter-dependency	31
	A.3	One block = one peripheral mode 23	34
	A.4	Block remapping (STM32F10x only)	34
	A.5	Function remapping	35
	A.6	Block shifting (only for STM32F10x and when "Keep Current Signals placement" is unchecked)	36
	A.7	Setting and clearing a peripheral mode	37
	A.8	Mapping a function individually 23	37
	A.9	GPIO signals mapping 23	37
Appendix	B ST ch	M32CubeMX C code generation design oices and limitations	88
Appendix	B.1	M32CubeMX C code generation design oices and limitations 23 STM32CubeMX generated C code and user sections 23	38 38
Appendix	B ST ch B.1 B.2	M32CubeMX C code generation design oices and limitations 23 STM32CubeMX generated C code and user sections 23 STM32CubeMX design choices for peripheral initialization 23	38 38 38
Appendix	B.1 B.2 B.3	M32CubeMX C code generation design 23 oices and limitations 23 STM32CubeMX generated C code and user sections 23 STM32CubeMX design choices for peripheral initialization 23 STM32CubeMX design choices and limitations for 23 STM32CubeMX design choices and limitations for 23	38 38 38
Appendix	B.1 B.2 B.3	M32CubeMX C code generation design 23 oices and limitations 23 STM32CubeMX generated C code and user sections 23 STM32CubeMX design choices for peripheral initialization 23 STM32CubeMX design choices for peripheral initialization 23 STM32CubeMX design choices and limitations for 23 B 3.1 Overview 23	38 38 38 39
Appendix	B.1 B.2 B.3	M32CubeMX C code generation design 23 oices and limitations 23 STM32CubeMX generated C code and user sections 23 STM32CubeMX design choices for peripheral initialization 23 STM32CubeMX design choices and limitations for 23 B.3.1 Overview 23 B.3.2 USB Host 24	38 38 38 39 39
Appendix	B.1 B.2 B.3	M32CubeMX C code generation design 23 oices and limitations 23 STM32CubeMX generated C code and user sections 23 STM32CubeMX design choices for peripheral initialization 23 STM32CubeMX design choices and limitations for 23 STM32CubeMX design choices and limitations for 23 B.3.1 Overview 23 B.3.2 USB Host 24 B.3.3 USB Device 24	38 38 38 39 39 40
Appendix	B.1 B.2 B.3	M32CubeMX C code generation design oices and limitations23STM32CubeMX generated C code and user sections23STM32CubeMX design choices for peripheral initialization23STM32CubeMX design choices and limitations for middleware initialization23B.3.1Overview23B.3.2USB Host24B.3.3USB Device24B.3.4FatFs24	 38 38 38 39 39 40 40 40 40
Appendix	B.1 B.2 B.3	M32CubeMX C code generation design oices and limitations23STM32CubeMX generated C code and user sections23STM32CubeMX design choices for peripheral initialization23STM32CubeMX design choices and limitations for middleware initialization23B.3.1Overview23B.3.2USB Host24B.3.3USB Device24B.3.4FatFs24B.3.5FreeRTOS24	 38 38 38 39 39 40 40 40 40 41
Appendix	B.1 B.2 B.3	M32CubeMX C code generation designoices and limitations23STM32CubeMX generated C code and user sections23STM32CubeMX design choices for peripheral initialization23STM32CubeMX design choices and limitations for23middleware initialization23B.3.1OverviewB.3.2USB HostB.3.3USB DeviceB.3.4FatFsPatron24B.3.5FreeRTOSB.3.6LwIPLwIP24	38 38 39 39 40 40 40 41 42
Appendix	B.1 B.2 B.3	M32CubeMX C code generation design oices and limitations23STM32CubeMX generated C code and user sections23STM32CubeMX design choices for peripheral initialization23STM32CubeMX design choices and limitations for middleware initialization23B.3.1Overview23B.3.2USB Host24B.3.4FatFs24B.3.5FreeRTOS24B.3.6LwIP24TM32 microcontrollers naming conventions24	 38 38 38 39 39 40 40 40 41 42 44
Appendix Appendix Appendix	B ST B.1 B.2 B.3 ST C ST C ST S S	M32CubeMX C code generation design 23 oices and limitations 23 STM32CubeMX generated C code and user sections 23 STM32CubeMX design choices for peripheral initialization 23 STM32CubeMX design choices and limitations for 23 middleware initialization 23 B.3.1 Overview 23 B.3.2 USB Host 24 B.3.3 USB Device 24 B.3.4 FatFs 24 B.3.5 FreeRTOS 24 B.3.6 LwIP 24 TM32 microcontrollers naming conventions 24 TM32 microcontrollers power consumption parameters 24	 38 38 39 39 40 40 40 41 42 44 46
Appendix Appendix Appendix	B S ⁻ B.1 B.2 B.3	M32CubeMX C code generation design 23 oices and limitations 23 STM32CubeMX generated C code and user sections 23 STM32CubeMX design choices for peripheral initialization 23 STM32CubeMX design choices for peripheral initialization 23 STM32CubeMX design choices and limitations for 23 middleware initialization 23 B.3.1 Overview 23 B.3.2 USB Host 24 B.3.3 USB Device 24 B.3.4 FatFs 24 B.3.5 FreeRTOS 24 M32 microcontrollers naming conventions 24 Power modes 24	 38 38 39 40 40 41 42 44 46 46

DocID025776 Rev 17



12	Revis	ion hist	ory	52
Appendix	E S	TM32Cı	ibe embedded software packages	51
		D.2.3	STM32L0 series feature 3 VCORE ranges2	50
		D.2.2	STM32F4 series feature several VCORE scales	50
		D.2.1	STM32L1 series feature 3 VCORE ranges	49
	D.2	Power of	consumption ranges	49
		D.1.3	STM32L0 series	48
		D.1.2	STM32F4 series	47



List of tables

Table 1.	Command line summary
Table 2.	Welcome page shortcuts
Table 3.	File menu functions
Table 4.	Project menu
Table 5.	Pinout menu
Table 6.	Window menu
Table 7.	Help menu
Table 8.	Peripheral and Middleware tree pane - icons and color scheme
Table 9.	STM32CubeMX Chip view - Icons and color scheme
Table 10.	Peripheral and middleware configuration buttons
Table 11.	Peripheral and Middleware Configuration window buttons and tooltips
Table 12.	Clock tree view widget
Table 13.	Voltage scaling versus power over-drive and HCLK frequency
Table 14.	Relations between power over-drive and HCLK frequency
Table 15.	Glossary
Table 16.	LL versus HAL code generation: drivers included in STM32CubeMX projects 149
Table 17.	LL versus HAL code generation: STM32CubeMX generated header files 149
Table 18.	LL versus HAL: STM32CubeMX generated source files
Table 19.	LL versus HAL: STM32CubeMX generated functions and function calls
Table 20.	Document revision history



List of figures

Figure 1.	Overview of STM32CubeMX C code generation flow.	16
Figure 2.	Example of STM32CubeMX installation in interactive mode	21
Figure 3.	STM32Cube Installation Wizard	22
Figure 4.	Auto-install command line.	23
Figure 5.	Adding STM32CubeMX plug-in archive	24
Figure 6.	Installing STM32CubeMX plug-in	25
Figure 7.	Closing STM32CubeMX perspective	25
Figure 8	Uninstalling STM32CubeMX plug-in	26
Figure 9	Opening Eclipse plug-in	30
Figure 10	STM32CubeMX perspective	31
Figure 11	Displaying Windows default proxy settings	32
Figure 12	Undater Settings window	33
Figure 12.	Connection Parameters tab. No provy	31
Figure 13.	Connection Parameters tab. Use System provy parameters	25
Figure 14.	Connection Parameters tab - Use System ploxy parameters	30
Figure 15.	Connection Parameters tab - Manual Conngulation of Proxy Server	30
Figure 16.		31
Figure 17.		39
Figure 18.	Removing library confirmation message.	39
Figure 19.	Library deletion progress window	40
Figure 20.	STM32CubeMX Welcome page	42
Figure 21.	New Project window - MCU selector.	44
Figure 22.	New Project window - board selector	45
Figure 23.	STM32CubeMX Main window upon MCU selection	46
Figure 24.	STM32CubeMX Main window upon board selection	
	(Peripheral default option unchecked)	47
Figure 25.	(Peripheral default option unchecked) STM32CubeMX Main window upon board selection	47
Figure 25.	(Peripheral default option unchecked) STM32CubeMX Main window upon board selection (Peripheral default option checked)	47 48
Figure 25. Figure 26.	(Peripheral default option unchecked)	47 48 50
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27.	 (Peripheral default option unchecked) STM32CubeMX Main window upon board selection (Peripheral default option checked) Pinout menus (Pinout tab selected) Pinout menus (Pinout tab not selected) 	47 48 50 51
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27. Figure 28.	 (Peripheral default option unchecked) STM32CubeMX Main window upon board selection (Peripheral default option checked) Pinout menus (Pinout tab selected) Pinout menus (Pinout tab not selected) MCU selection menu 	47 48 50 51 53
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27. Figure 28. Figure 29.	 (Peripheral default option unchecked) STM32CubeMX Main window upon board selection (Peripheral default option checked) Pinout menus (Pinout tab selected) Pinout menus (Pinout tab not selected) MCU selection menu Output pane 	47 48 50 51 53 54
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27. Figure 28. Figure 29. Figure 30.	 (Peripheral default option unchecked) STM32CubeMX Main window upon board selection (Peripheral default option checked) Pinout menus (Pinout tab selected) Pinout menus (Pinout tab not selected) MCU selection menu Output pane Automatic project import. 	47 48 50 51 53 54 55
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27. Figure 28. Figure 29. Figure 30. Figure 31.	(Peripheral default option unchecked) STM32CubeMX Main window upon board selection (Peripheral default option checked) Pinout menus (Pinout tab selected) Pinout menus (Pinout tab not selected) MCU selection menu Output pane Automatic project import Manual project import	47 48 50 51 53 54 55 56
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27. Figure 28. Figure 29. Figure 30. Figure 31. Figure 32	(Peripheral default option unchecked)	47 48 50 51 53 54 55 56 58
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27. Figure 28. Figure 29. Figure 30. Figure 31. Figure 32. Figure 33	(Peripheral default option unchecked)	47 48 50 51 53 54 55 56 58 59
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27. Figure 28. Figure 29. Figure 30. Figure 31. Figure 32. Figure 33. Figure 34.	(Peripheral default option unchecked)	47 48 50 51 53 54 55 56 58 59 60
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27. Figure 28. Figure 29. Figure 30. Figure 31. Figure 32. Figure 33. Figure 34. Figure 35.	(Peripheral default option unchecked)	47 48 50 51 53 54 55 56 58 59 60
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27. Figure 28. Figure 29. Figure 30. Figure 31. Figure 32. Figure 33. Figure 34. Figure 35. Figure 36.	(Peripheral default option unchecked) STM32CubeMX Main window upon board selection (Peripheral default option checked) Pinout menus (Pinout tab selected) Pinout menus (Pinout tab not selected) MCU selection menu Output pane Automatic project import Import Project menu - Try import with errors Import Project menu - Successful import after adjustments Set unused pins window Set unused CPIO pins with Keen Current Signals Placement checked	47 48 50 51 53 54 55 56 58 59 60 61
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27. Figure 28. Figure 29. Figure 30. Figure 31. Figure 32. Figure 33. Figure 34. Figure 35. Figure 36. Figure 37	(Peripheral default option unchecked) STM32CubeMX Main window upon board selection (Peripheral default option checked) Pinout menus (Pinout tab selected) Pinout menus (Pinout tab not selected) MCU selection menu Output pane Automatic project import Manual project import Import Project menu - Try import with errors Import Project menu - Successful import after adjustments Set unused pins window Set unused GPIO pins with Keep Current Signals Placement checked	47 48 50 51 53 54 55 56 59 60 61 62
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27. Figure 28. Figure 29. Figure 30. Figure 31. Figure 32. Figure 33. Figure 34. Figure 35. Figure 36. Figure 37.	(Peripheral default option unchecked)	47 48 50 51 53 55 56 59 60 60 61 62 63
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27. Figure 28. Figure 29. Figure 30. Figure 31. Figure 32. Figure 33. Figure 34. Figure 35. Figure 36. Figure 38. Eigure 20.	(Peripheral default option unchecked)	47 48 50 51 53 54 55 56 60 60 61 62 63 64
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27. Figure 28. Figure 29. Figure 30. Figure 31. Figure 32. Figure 33. Figure 34. Figure 35. Figure 36. Figure 37. Figure 39. Figure 40.	(Peripheral default option unchecked)	47 48 50 51 53 55 56 59 60 61 23 64 65
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27. Figure 28. Figure 29. Figure 30. Figure 31. Figure 31. Figure 33. Figure 34. Figure 35. Figure 36. Figure 37. Figure 38. Figure 39. Figure 40.	(Peripheral default option unchecked)	47 48 50 51 53 55 56 58 50 60 61 62 64 65 66 65 66 65 65 65 65 65 65 65 65 65
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27. Figure 28. Figure 29. Figure 30. Figure 31. Figure 32. Figure 33. Figure 34. Figure 35. Figure 36. Figure 37. Figure 38. Figure 39. Figure 40. Figure 41.	(Peripheral default option unchecked) STM32CubeMX Main window upon board selection (Peripheral default option checked) Pinout menus (Pinout tab selected) Pinout menus (Pinout tab not selected) MCU selection menu Output pane Automatic project import Manual project import Import Project menu - Try import with errors Import Project menu - Successful import after adjustments Set unused pins window Reset used pins window Set unused GPIO pins with Keep Current Signals Placement checked Set unused GPIO pins with Keep Current Signals Placement unchecked Project Settings window Project folder Selecting a different firmware location Firmware location selection error message	47 48 50 53 55 56 59 60 61 23 64 65 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27. Figure 28. Figure 29. Figure 30. Figure 31. Figure 32. Figure 33. Figure 34. Figure 35. Figure 36. Figure 37. Figure 38. Figure 39. Figure 40. Figure 41. Figure 42.	(Peripheral default option unchecked) STM32CubeMX Main window upon board selection (Peripheral default option checked) Pinout menus (Pinout tab selected) Pinout menus (Pinout tab not selected) MCU selection menu Output pane Automatic project import. Manual project import. Import Project menu - Try import with errors Import Project menu - Successful import after adjustments Set unused pins window Reset used pins window Set unused GPIO pins with Keep Current Signals Placement checked Project Settings window Project folder. Selecting a different firmware location Firmware location selection error message Recomended new firmware repository structure	47 48 50 51 53 55 55 56 60 61 23 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27. Figure 28. Figure 29. Figure 30. Figure 31. Figure 32. Figure 33. Figure 33. Figure 34. Figure 35. Figure 36. Figure 37. Figure 38. Figure 39. Figure 40. Figure 41. Figure 42. Figure 43.	(Peripheral default option unchecked)	47 48 50 51 53 55 56 59 60 61 23 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27. Figure 28. Figure 29. Figure 30. Figure 31. Figure 32. Figure 33. Figure 34. Figure 35. Figure 35. Figure 36. Figure 37. Figure 38. Figure 39. Figure 40. Figure 41. Figure 43. Figure 44.	(Peripheral default option unchecked) STM32CubeMX Main window upon board selection (Peripheral default option checked) Pinout menus (Pinout tab selected) Pinout menus (Pinout tab not selected) MCU selection menu Output pane Automatic project import Manual project import Import Project menu - Try import with errors Import Project menu - Successful import after adjustments Set unused pins window Reset used pins window Set unused GPIO pins with Keep Current Signals Placement checked Set unused GPIO pins with Keep Current Signals Placement unchecked Project Settings window Project folder Selecting a different firmware location Firmware location selection error message Recomended new firmware repository structure Project Settings Code Generator Template Settings window	47 48 50 53 54 55 56 59 60 61 23 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66 66
Figure 25. Figure 26. Figure 27. Figure 28. Figure 29. Figure 30. Figure 31. Figure 32. Figure 33. Figure 34. Figure 35. Figure 35. Figure 36. Figure 37. Figure 38. Figure 39. Figure 40. Figure 41. Figure 43. Figure 43. Figure 45.	(Peripheral default option unchecked)	$\begin{array}{c} 47\\ 48\\ 50\\ 53\\ 54\\ 55\\ 58\\ 59\\ 60\\ 61\\ 23\\ 66\\ 66\\ 66\\ 66\\ 69\\ 70\\ \end{array}$



Eiguro 47	About window 72
Figure 47.	STM22CuboMX Disout view 72
Figure 40.	STINSZCUDENIA FILIOUL VIEW
Figure 49.	Chip view
Figure 50.	Red highlights and toollip example: no mode configuration available
Figure 51.	
Figure 52.	1 ooltip example: all configurations unavailable 78 Madif installa sciences in the Objective 78
Figure 53.	
Figure 54.	
Figure 55.	Pins/Signals Options window
Figure 56.	Selecting a HAL timebase source (STM32F407 example)
Figure 57.	TIM2 selected as HAL timebase source
Figure 58.	NVIC settings when using SysTick as HAL timebase, no FreeRTOS
Figure 59.	NVIC settings when using FreeRTOS and SysTick as HAL timebase
Figure 60.	NVIC settings when using FreeRTOS and TIM2 as HAL timebase
Figure 61.	STM32CubeMX Configuration view
Figure 62.	Configuration window tabs for GPIO, DMA and NVIC settings (STM32F4 series) 89
Figure 63.	Peripheral Configuration window (STM32F4 series)
Figure 64.	User Constants window
Figure 65.	Extract of the generated main.h file
Figure 66.	Using constants for peripheral parameter settings
Figure 67.	Specifying user constant value and name
Figure 68.	Deleting user constant not allowed when
	constant already used for another constant definition
Figure 69.	Deleting a user constant used for parameter configuration-
	Confirmation request
Figure 70.	Deleting a user constant used for peripheral configuration -
	Consequence on peripheral configuration
Figure 71.	Searching user constants list for name
Figure 72.	Searching user constants list for value
Figure 73.	GPIO Configuration window - GPIO selection
Figure 74.	GPIO Configuration window - displaying GPIO settings
Figure 75.	GPIO configuration grouped by peripheral
Figure 76.	Multiple Pins Configuration
Figure 77.	Adding a new DMA request
Figure 78.	DMA Configuration
Figure 79.	DMA MemToMem configuration
Figure 80.	NVIC Configuration tab - FreeRTOS disabled
Figure 81.	NVIC Configuration tab - FreeRTOS enabled
Figure 82.	I2C NVIC Configuration window
Figure 83.	NVIC Code generation – All interrupts enabled
Figure 84.	NVIC Code generation – Interrupt initialization sequence configuration
Figure 85.	NVIC Code generation – IRQ Handler generation
Figure 86.	FreeRTOS configuration view
Figure 87.	FreeRTOS: configuring tasks and gueues
Figure 88.	FreeRTOS: creating a new task
Figure 89.	FreeRTOS - Configuring timers, mutexes and semaphores
Figure 90.	FreeRTOS Heap usage
Figure 91.	STM32F429xx Clock Tree configuration view
Figure 92.	Clock Tree configuration view with errors
Figure 93.	Clock tree configuration: enabling RTC, RCC Clock source
0	and outputs from Pinout view
Figure 94.	Clock tree configuration: RCC Peripheral Advanced parameters
-	



Figure 95.	Power Consumption Calculator default view	128
Figure 96.	Battery selection	129
Figure 97.	Building a power consumption sequence	130
Figure 98.	Step management functions	130
Figure 99.	Power consumption sequence: new step default view	131
Figure 100.	Edit Step window	132
Figure 101.	Enabling the transition checker option on an already configured sequence -	
-	all transitions valid	133
Figure 102.	Enabling the transition checker option on an already configured sequence -	
U	at least one transition invalid	134
Figure 103.	Transition checker option -show log	134
Figure 104.	Interpolated Power Consumption	136
Figure 105.	ADC selected in Pinout view.	137
Figure 106.	Power Consumption Calculator Step configuration window:	
U	ADC enabled using import pinout	138
Figure 107.	Power Consumption Calculator view after sequence building	139
Figure 108.	Sequence table management functions	140
Figure 109.	Power Consumption: Peripherals Consumption Chart	141
Figure 110.	Description of the Results area.	142
Figure 111.	Peripheral power consumption tooltip.	144
Figure 112.	Labels for pins generating define statements	147
Figure 113.	User constant generating define statements	147
Figure 114.		147
Figure 115.	HAL-based peripheral initialization: usart.c code snippet.	152
Figure 116.	LL-based peripheral initialization: usart.c code snippet	153
Figure 117.	HAL versus LL : main.c code snippet	153
Figure 118.	extra templates folder – default content.	155
Figure 119.	extra templates folder with user templates	156
Figure 120.	Project root folder with corresponding custom generated files	156
Figure 121.	User custom folder for templates	157
Figure 122.	Custom folder with corresponding custom generated files	157
Figure 123.	MCU selection	158
Figure 124.	Pinout view with MCUs selection	159
Figure 125.	Pinout view without MCUs selection window	160
Figure 126.	GPIO pin configuration	161
Figure 127.	Timer configuration	161
Figure 128.	Simple pinout configuration	162
Figure 129.	Save Project As window	162
Figure 130.	Generate Project Report - New project creation	163
Figure 131.	Generate Project Report - Project successfully created	163
Figure 132.	Clock tree view	164
Figure 133.	HSI clock enabled	165
Figure 134.	HSE clock source disabled	165
Figure 135.	HSE clock source enabled	165
Figure 136.	External PLL clock source enabled	165
Figure 137.	Configuration view	167
Figure 138.	Case of Peripheral and Middleware without configuration parameters.	167
Figure 139.	Timer 3 configuration window	168
Figure 140.	Timer 3 configuration	169
Figure 141.	Enabling Timer 3 interrupt	170
Figure 142.	GPIO configuration color scheme and tooltip	170
Figure 143.	GPIO mode configuration	171



Figure 144.	DMA Parameters configuration window	172
Figure 145.	FatFs disabled	172
Figure 146.	USB Host configuration	173
Figure 147.	FatFs over USB mode enabled	173
Figure 148.	Configuration view with FatFs and USB enabled	173
Figure 149.	FatFs peripheral instances	174
Figure 150.	FatFs define statements	174
Figure 151.	Project Settings and toolchain choice.	175
Figure 152.	Project Settings menu - Code Generator tab	176
Figure 153.	Missing firmware package warning message	177
Figure 154.	Error during download	177
Figure 155.	Updater settings for download	178
Figure 156.	Updater settings with connection	179
Figure 157.	Downloading the firmware package	179
Figure 158.	Unzipping the firmware package	180
Figure 159.	C code generation completion message	180
Figure 160.	C code generation output folder	181
Figure 161.	C code generation output: Projects folder	182
Figure 162.	C code generation for EWARM	183
Figure 163.	STM32CubeMX generated project open in IAR IDE	184
Figure 164.	IAR options	185
Figure 165.	SWD connection	185
Figure 166.	Project building log	186
Figure 167.	User Section 2	186
Figure 168.	User Section 4	186
Figure 169.	Import Project menu	188
Figure 170.	Project Import status.	188
Figure 171.	Board selection	189
Figure 172.	SDIO peripheral configuration	190
Figure 173.	FatFs mode configuration	190
Figure 174.	RCC peripheral configuration	190
Figure 175.	Clock tree view	191
Figure 176.	Project Settings menu - Code Generator tab	191
Figure 177.	C code generation completion message	192
Figure 178.	IDE workspace	192
Figure 179.	Power Consumption Calculation example	198
Figure 180.	VDD and battery selection menu	199
Figure 181.	Sequence table	199
Figure 182.	sequence results before optimization	200
Figure 183.	Step 1 optimization	201
Figure 184.	Step 5 optimization	202
Figure 185.	Step 6 optimization	203
Figure 186.	Step 7 optimization	204
Figure 187.	Step 8 optimization	205
Figure 188.	Step 10 optimization	206
Figure 189.	Power sequence results after optimizations	207
Figure 190.	Selecting NUCLEO 1053R8 board	209
Figure 191.	Selecting debug pins	210
Figure 192	Selecting TIM2 clock source.	210
Figure 193	Selecting asynchronous mode for USART2	211
Figure 194	Checking pin assignment	211
Figure 195	Configuring the MCU clock tree	212



Figure 196.	Configuring USART2 parameters	213
Figure 197.	Configuring TIM2 parameters	214
Figure 198.	Enabling TIM2 interrupt	215
Figure 199.	Project Settings menu.	216
Figure 200.	Generating the code	217
Figure 201.	Checking the communication port	218
Figure 202.	Setting Tera Term port parameters	219
Figure 203.	Setting Tera Term port parameters	219
Figure 204.	Existing or new project pinout	220
Figure 205.	List of pinout compatible MCUs - partial match	
-	with hardware compatibility.	221
Figure 206.	List of Pinout compatible MCUs - exact and partial match	221
Figure 207.	Selecting a compatible MCU and importing the configuration	222
Figure 208.	Configuration imported to the selected compatible MCU	222
Figure 209.	Java Control Panel	225
Figure 210.	Pinout view - Enabling the RTC	225
Figure 211.	Pinout view - Enabling LSE and HSE clocks	226
Figure 212.	Pinout view - Setting LSE/HSE clock frequency	226
Figure 213.	Block mapping	228
Figure 214.	Block remapping	229
Figure 215.	Block remapping - example 1	230
Figure 216.	Block remapping - example 2	231
Figure 217.	Block inter-dependency - SPI signals assigned to PB3/4/5	232
Figure 218.	Block inter-dependency - SPI1_MISO function assigned to PA6	233
Figure 219.	One block = one peripheral mode - I2C1_SMBA function assigned to PB5	234
Figure 220.	Block remapping - example 2	235
Figure 221.	Function remapping example	235
Figure 222.	Block shifting not applied	236
Figure 223.	Block shifting applied	237
Figure 224.	FreeRTOS HOOK functions to be completed by user	241
Figure 225.	LwIP 1.4.1 configuration	242
Figure 226.	LwIP 1.5 configuration	243
Figure 227.	STM32 microcontroller part numbering scheme	245
Figure 228.	STM32Cube Embedded Software package	251



1 STM32Cube overview

STMCube[™] is an STMicroelectronics original initiative to ease developers life by reducing development efforts, time and cost. STM32Cube covers STM32 portfolio.

STM32Cube includes:

- The STM32CubeMX, a graphical software configuration tool that allows to generate C initialization C code using graphical wizards.
- A comprehensive embedded software platform, delivered per series (such as STM32CubeF2 for STM32F2 series and STM32CubeF4 for STM32F4 series)
 - The STM32Cube HAL, an STM32 abstraction layer embedded software, ensuring maximized portability across STM32 portfolio
 - A consistent set of middleware components such as RTOS, USB, TCP/IP, Graphics
 - All embedded software utilities coming with a full set of examples.



2 Getting started with STM32CubeMX

2.1 Principles

Customers need to quickly identify the MCU that best meets their requirements (core architecture, features, memory size, performance...). While board designers main concerns are to optimize the microcontroller pin configuration for their board layout and to fulfill the application requirements (choice of peripherals operating modes), embedded system developers are more interested in developing new applications for a specific target device, and migrating existing designs to different microcontrollers.

The time taken to migrate to new platforms and update the C code to new firmware drivers adds unnecessary delays to the project. STM32CubeMX was developed within STM32Cube initiative which purpose is to meet customer key requirements to maximize software reuse and minimize the time to create the target system:

- Software reuse and application design portability are achieved through STM32Cube firmware solution proposing a common Hardware Abstraction Layer API across STM32 portfolio.
- Optimized migration time is achieved thanks to STM32CubeMX built-in knowledge of STM32 microcontrollers, peripherals and middleware (LwIP and USB communication protocol stacks, FatFs file system for small embedded systems, FreeRTOS).

STM32CubeMX graphical interface performs the following functions:

- Fast and easy configuration of the MCU pins, clock tree and operating modes for the selected peripherals and middleware
- Generation of pin configuration report for board designers
- Generation of a complete project with all the necessary libraries and initialization C code to set up the device in the user defined operating mode. The project can be directly open in the selected application development environment (for a selection of supported IDEs) to proceed with application development (see *Figure 1*).

During the configuration process, STM32CubeMX detects conflicts and invalid settings and highlights them through meaningful icons and useful tool tips.





Figure 1. Overview of STM32CubeMX C code generation flow



2.2 Key features

STM32CubeMX comes with the following features:

Project management

- STM32CubeMX allows creating, saving and loading previously saved projects:
- When STM32CubeMX is launched, the user can choose to create a new project or to load a previously saved project.
- Saving the project saves user settings and configuration performed within the project in an .ioc file that will be used the next time the project will be loaded in STM32CubeMX.

STM32CubeMX also allows importing previously saved projects in new projects. STM32CubeMX projects come in two flavors:

- MCU configuration only: .ioc file are saved anywhere, next to other .ioc files.
- MCU configuration with C code generation: in this case .ioc files are saved in a dedicated project folder along with the generated source C code. There can be only one .ioc file per project.
- Easy MCU and STMicroelectronics board selection

When starting a new project, a dedicated window opens to select either a microcontroller or an STMicroelectronics board from STM32 portfolio. Different filtering options are available to ease the MCU and board selection.

Easy pinout configuration

- From the **Pinout** view, the user can select the peripherals from a list and configure the peripheral modes required for the application. STM32CubeMX assigns and configures the pins accordingly.
- For more advanced users, it is also possible to directly map a peripheral function to a physical pin using the **Chip** view. The signals can be locked on pins to prevent STM32CubeMX conflict solver from moving the signal to another pin.
- Pinout configuration can be exported as a .csv file.

• Complete project generation

The project generation includes pinout, firmware and middleware initialization C code for a set of IDEs. It is based on STM32Cube embedded software libraries. The following actions can be performed:

- Starting from the previously defined pinout, the user can proceed with the configuration of middleware, clock tree, services (RNG, CRC, etc...) and peripheral parameters. STM32CubeMX generates the corresponding initialization C code. The result is a project directory including generated main.c file and C header files for configuration and initialization, plus a copy of the necessary HAL and middleware libraries as well as specific files for the selected IDE.
- The user can modify the generated source files by adding user-defined C code in user dedicated sections. STM32CubeMX ensures that the user C code is preserved upon next C code generation (the user C code is commented if it is no longer relevant for the current configuration).
- STM32CubeMX can generate user files by using user-defined freemarker .ftl template files.
- From the Project settings menu, the user can select the development tool chain (IDE) for which the C code has to be generated. STM32CubeMX ensures that the IDE relevant project files are added to the project folder so that the project can be



directly imported as a new project within third party IDE (IAR[™] EWARM, Keil[™] MDK-ARM, Atollic[®] TrueSTUDIO and AC6 System Workbench for STM32).

Power consumption calculation

Starting with the selection of a microcontroller part number and a battery type, the user can define a sequence of steps representing the application life cycle and parameters (choice of frequencies, enabled peripherals, step duration). STM32CubeMX Power Consumption Calculator returns the corresponding power consumption and battery life estimates.

Clock tree configuration

STM32CubeMX offers a graphical representation of the clock tree as it can be found in the device reference manual. The user can change the default settings (clock sources, prescaler and frequency values). The clock tree is then updated accordingly. Invalid settings and limitations are highlighted and documented with tool tips. Clock tree configuration conflicts can be solved by using the solver feature. When no exact match is found for a given user configuration, STM32CubeMX proposes the closest solution.

Automatic updates of STM32CubeMX and STM32Cube firmware packages

STM32CubeMX comes with an updater mechanism that can be configured for automatic or on-demand check for updates. It supports STM32CubeMX self-updates as well as STM32Cube firmware library package updates. The updater mechanism also allows deleting previously installed packages.

Report generation

.pdf and .csv reports can be generated to document user configuration work.

2.3 Rules and limitations

- C code generation covers only peripheral and middleware initialization. It is based on STM32Cube HAL firmware libraries.
- STM32CubeMX C code generation covers only initialization code for peripherals and middlewares that use the drivers included in STM32Cube embedded software packages. The code generation of some peripherals and middlewares, such as cryptographic peripherals and StemWin graphic library, is not yet supported.
- Refer to *Appendix A* for a description of pin assignment rules.
- Refer to *Appendix B* for a description of STM32CubeMX C code generation design choices and limitations.



UM1718

3 Installing and running STM32CubeMX

3.1 System requirements

3.1.1 Supported operating systems and architectures

- Windows[®] 7: 32-bit (x86), 64-bit (x64)
- Windows[®] 8: 32-bit (x86), 64-bit (x64)
- Windows[®] 10: 32-bit (x86), 64-bit (x64)
- Linux[®]: 32-bit (x86) and 64-bit (x64) (tested on RedHat, Ubuntu and Fedora)
 Since STM32CubeMX is a 32-bit application, some versions of Linux 64-bit distributions require to install 32-bit compliant packages such as ia32-libs.
- MacOS: 64-bit (x64) (tested on OS X Yosemite)

3.1.2 Memory prerequisites

• Recommended minimum RAM: 2 Gbytes.

3.1.3 Software requirements

The following software must be installed:

- For Windows and Linux, install Java Run Time Environment for 1.7.0_45 or later If Java is not installed on your computer or if you have an old version, STM32CubeMX installer will open the Java download web page and stop.
- For MacOS, install Java Development Kit 1.7.0_45 or later
- For Eclipse plug-in installation, install one of the following IDE:
 - Eclipse IDE Juno (4.2)
 - Eclipse Luna (4.4)
 - Eclipse Kepler (4.3)
 - Eclipse Mars (4.5)

3.2 Installing/uninstalling STM32CubeMX standalone version

3.2.1 Installing STM32CubeMX standalone version

To install STM32CubeMX, follow the steps below:

- 1. Download STM32CubeMX installation package from www.st.com/stm32cubemx.
- 2. Extract (unzip) stm32cubemx.zip whole package into the same directory.
- 3. Check your access rights and launch the installation wizard:

On windows:

- a) Make sure you have administrators rights.
- b) Double-click the SetupSTM32CubeMX-VERSION.exe file to launch the installation wizard.



On Linux:

- a) Make sure you have access rights to the target installation directory. You can run the installation as root (or sudo) to install STM32CubeMX in shared directories.
- b) Double-click (or launch from the console window) on the SetupSTM32CubeMX-VERSION.linux file.

On MacOS:

- a) Make sure you have administrators rights.
- b) Double- click SetupSTM32CubeMX-VERSION application file to launch the installation wizard.
- 4. Upon successful installation of STM32CubeMX on Windows, STM32CubeMX icon is displayed on your desktop and STM32CubeMX application is available from the Program menu. STM32CubeMX .ioc files are displayed with a cube icon. Double-click them to open up them using STM32CubeMX.
- 5. Delete the content of the zip from your disk.
- Note: If the proper version of the Java Runtime Environment (version 1.7_45 or newer) is not installed, the wizard will propose to download it and stop. Restart STM32CubeMX installation once Java installation is complete. Refer to Section 11: FAQ for issues when installing the JRE.

When working on Windows, only the latest installation of STM32CubeMX will be enabled in the program menu. Previous versions can be kept on your PC (not recommended) when different installation folders have been specified. Otherwise, the new installation overwrites the previous ones.

3.2.2 Installing STM32CubeMX from command line

There are 2 ways to launch an installation from a console window: either in console interactive mode or via a script.

Interactive mode

To perform interactive installation, type the following command:

java -jar SetupSTM32CubeMX-4.14.0.exe -console

At each installation step, an answer is requested (see *Figure 2* below).



Administrator: C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe	
Press 1 to accept, 2 to reject, 3 to redisplay	^
Ŝelect target path [C:\Program Files\STMicroelectronics\STM32Cube\STM32CubeMX] C:\Program Files\MX set uninstallName=STM32CubeMX(3)	
Press 1 to continue, 2 to quit, 3 to redisplay	
Create shortcuts in the Start-Menu Enter Y for Yes, N for No:	
n Create additional shortcuts on the desktop Enter Y for Yes, N for No: n	
create shortcut for: all users Enter Y for Yes, N for No:	
[Starting to unpack] [Processing package: Core <1/3>]	
[Processing package: Old DataBases (2/3)] [Processing package: Help (3/3)] [Unpacking finished]	
Generate an automatic installation script Enter Y for Yes, N for No:	=
n Installation was successful application installed on C:\Program Files\MX	
[Writing the uninstaller data] [Console installation done]	
C:\Users\>	-

Figure 2. Example of STM32CubeMX installation in interactive mode



Auto-install mode

At end of an installation, performed either using STM32CubeMX graphical wizard or console mode, it is possible to generate an auto-installation script containing user installation preferences (see *Figure 3* below):

F STM32CubeMX Installa	tion Wizard	X
Installation Finished		Ŵ
6 77	Installation has completed successfully.	
Life.augmented	An uninstaller program has been created in:	
STM32 Cube	C:\Program Files\STMicroelectronics\STM32Cube\STM32CubeMX_4_8_A5\Uninstaller	
	Generate an automatic installation script	
S I MICROELECTRONICS	0	Done

Figure 3. STM32Cube Installation Wizard

You can then launch the installation just by typing the following command:

java -jar SetupSTM32CubeMX-4.14.0.exe auto-install.xml



Figure 4. Auto-install command line

Administrator: C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe
The STM32CubeMX installer you are attempting to run seems to have a copy already running.
This could be from a previous failed installation attempt or you may have accide ntally launched
the installer twice. The recommended action is to select 'No' and wait for the optimation \mathbf{E}
the installer to start. If you are sure there is no other copy of the installer running, click
the 'Yes' button to allow this installer to run.
Are you sure you want to continue with this installation? Enter Y for Yes, N for No:
y [Starting automated installation]
set uninstallName=SIM32CubeMX(2) [Starting to unpack]
[Processing package: Old DataBases (2/3)]
[Unpacking finished]
[Automated installation done]
C:\Users\>

3.2.3 Uninstalling STM32CubeMX standalone version

Uninstalling STM32CubeMX on MacOS

To uninstall STM32CubeMX on MacOS, use the following command line:

java -jar <STM32CubeMX installation path>/Uninstaller/uninstaller.jar.

Uninstalling STM32CubeMX on Linux

There are three means to uninstall STM32CubeMX on Linux:

- By using the following command line java -jar <STM32CubeMX installation path>/Uninstaller/uninstaller.jar.
- Through a Windows Explorer window:
 - a) Use a file explorer.
 - b) Go to the Uninstaller directory of STM32CubeMX installation.
 - c) Double-click the start uninstall desktop shortcut.

Uninstalling STM32CubeMX on Windows

There are three means to uninstall STM32CubeMX on Windows:

- By using the following command line
 - java -jar <STM32CubeMX installation path>/Uninstaller/uninstaller.jar.
 - Through a Windows Explorer window:
 - a) Use a file explorer.
 - b) Go to the Uninstaller directory of STM32CubeMX installation.
 - c) Double-click the start uninstall desktop shortcut.
- Through the Windows Control Panel:
 - a) Select Programs and Features from the Windows Control Panel to display the list of programs installed on your computer.
 - b) Right-click STM32CubeMX and select uninstall.



3.3 Installing STM32CubeMX plug-in version

STM32CubeMX plug-in can be installed within Eclipse IDE development tool chain. Installation related procedures are described in this section.

3.3.1 Downloading STM32CubeMX plug-in installation package

To download STM32CubeMX plug-in, follow the sequence below:

- 1. Go to http://www.st.com/stm32cubemx.
- 2. Download STM32CubeMX- Eclipse-plug-in .zip file to your local disk.

3.3.2 Installing STM32CubeMX as an Eclipse IDE plug-in

To install STM32CubeMX as an Eclipse IDE plug-in, follow the sequence below:

- 1. Launch the Eclipse environment.
- 2. Select Help > Install New Software from the main menu bar. The Available Software window appears.
- 3. Click Add. The Add Repository window opens.
- 4. Click Archive. The Repository archive browser opens.
- 5. Select the STM32CubeMX- Eclipse-plug-in .zip file that you downloaded and click Open (see *Figure 5*).
- 6. Click OK in the Add Repository dialog box,
- 7. Check STM32CubeMX_Eclipse_plug-in and click Next (see Figure 6).
- 8. Click Next in the Install Details dialog box.
- 9. Click "I accept the terms of the license agreement" in the Review Licenses dialog box and then click Finish.
- 10. Click OK in the Security Warning menu.
- 11. Click OK when requested to restart Eclipse IDE (see *Section 3.4.2: Running STM32CubeMX in command-line mode*).

Figure 5. Adding STM32CubeMX plug-in archive

😂 Add Re	pository	X
<u>N</u> ame:		L <u>o</u> cal
Location:	jar:file:/C:/Users/JohnDoe/Temp/STM32CubeMX_eclipseplugi	<u>A</u> rchive
?	ОК	Cancel



Figure 6. Installin	ig STM32Cu	Sense prag .		
Install				
Available Software				
Check the items that you wish to install.				
Work with: STM32CubeMX_update_site - jar:file:/C:/Users/frq09	9031/Documents/T	emp/STM32CubeM	X_eclipseplugin 🔻	<u>A</u> dd
Fi	ind more software	by working with the	"Available Software	<u>Sites"</u> preference
type filter text				
Name		Version		
Select All				
Select All Deselect All Details				2
Show only the latest versions of available software	V ∐ide iter	ms that are already	installed	:
Select All Deselect All Details Show only the latest versions of available software Group items by category	I Hide iter What is a	ns that are already lready installed?	installed	
Select All Deselect All Details Image: Select All select All Show only the latest versions of available software Image: Select All	☑ Hide iter What is a	ns that are already installed?	installed	
Select All Details Show only the latest versions of available software Group items by category Show only software applicable to target environment Contact all update sites during install to find required software	<mark>⊮</mark> Hide iter What is <u>a</u> e	ns that are already i Iready installed?	installed	

Uninstalling STM32CubeMX as Eclipse IDE plug-in 3.3.3

To uninstall STM32CubeMX plug-in in Eclipse IDE, follow sequence below:

- In Eclipse, right-click STM32CubeMX perspective Icon (see *Figure 7*) and select Close. 1.
- 2. From Eclipse Help menu, select Install New Software.
- 3. Click Installed Software tab, then select STM32CubeMX and click Uninstall.
- Click Finish in Uninstall Details menu (see Figure 8). 4.

Figure 7. Closing STM32CubeMX perspective

Quick Access	🖻 🗟 C/C++ 💿 STM32CubeMX



Uninstall Details Review and confirm the items to be uni	installed.	
Name	Version	Id
🖗 STM32CubeMX	4.0.0.201402121115	com.st.mi
< Details	III	4
Details STM32CubeMX is a graphical tool enabl	III ling users to configure	¢ More

Figure 8. Uninstalling STM32CubeMX plug-in



3.4 Launching STM32CubeMX

3.4.1 Running STM32CubeMX as standalone application

To run STM32CubeMX as a standalone application on Windows:

- select STM32CubeMX from Program Files > ST Microelectronics > STM32CubeMX.
- or double-click STM32CubeMX icon on your desktop.

To run STM32CubeMX as a standalone application on Linux, launch the STM32CubeMX executable from STM32CubeMX installation directory.

3.4.2 Running STM32CubeMX in command-line mode

To facilitate its integration with other tools, STM32CubeMX provides a command-line mode. Using a set of commands, you can:

- Load an MCU
- Load an existing configuration
- Save a current configuration
- Set project parameters and generate corresponding code
- Generate user code from templates.

Three command-line modes are available:

- To run STM32CubeMX in interactive command-line mode, use the following command line:
 - On Windows:
 - java -jar STM32CubeMX.exe -i
 - On Linux and MacOS:

```
java -jar STM32CubeMX -i
```

The "MX>" prompt is then displayed to indicate that the application is ready to accept commands.

- To run STM32CubeMX in command-line mode getting commands from a script, use the following command line:
 - On Windows:

```
java -jar STM32CubeMX.exe -s <script filename>
```

- On Linux and MacOS:
- java -jar STM32CubeMX -s <script filename>

All the commands to be executed must be listed in the script file. An example of script file content is shown below:

```
load STM32F417VETx
project name MyFirstMXGeneratedProject
project toolchain "MDK-ARM v4"
project path C:\STM32CubeProjects\STM32F417VETx
project generate
exit
```



- To run STM32CubeMX in command-line mode getting commands from a scripts and without UI, use the following command line:
 - On Windows:
 - java -jar STM32CubeMX.exe -q <script filename>
 - On Linux and MacOS:

java -jar STM32CubeMX -q <script filename>

Here again, the user can enter commands when the MX prompt is displayed.

See *Table 1* for available commands.

Command line	Purpose	Example
help	This command displays the list of available commands	help
load <mcu></mcu>	This command loads the selected MCU	load STM32F101RCTx load STM32F101Z(F-G)Tx
config load <filename></filename>	This command loads a previously saved configuration	config load C:\Cube\ccmram\ccmram.ioc
config save <filename></filename>	This command saves the current configuration	config save C:\Cube\ccmram\ccmram.ioc
config saveext <filename></filename>	This command saves the current configuration with all parameters, including those for which values have been kept to defaults (unchanged by the user).	config saveext C:\Cube\ccmram\ccmram.ioc
config saveas <filename></filename>	This command saves the current project under a new name	config saveas C:\Cube\ccmram2\ccmram2.ioc
csv pinout <filename></filename>	This command exports the current pin configuration as a csv file. This file could later be imported into a board layout tool.	Csv pinout mypinout.csv
script <filename></filename>	This command runs all commands in the script file. There must be one command per line.	script myscript.txt
project couplefilesbyip <0 1>	This code generation option allows choosing between 0 for generating the peripheral initializations in the main or 1 for generating each peripheral initialization in dedicated .c/.h files.	project couplefilesbyip 1

Table 1. Command line summary



Command line	Purpose	Example
setDriver <peripheral name=""> <hal ll="" =""></hal></peripheral>	For supported series, STM32CubeMX can generate peripheral initialization code based on LL drivers or on HAL drivers. This command line allows choosing, for each peripheral, between HAL- based and LL-based code generation. By default code generation is based on HAL drivers.	setDriver ADC LL setDriver I2C HAL
generate code <path></path>	This command generates only "STM32CubeMX generated" code and not a complete project that would include STM32Cube firmware libraries and Toolchains project files. To generate a project, use "project generate".	generate code C:\mypath
set tpl_path <path></path>	This command sets the path to the source folder containing the .ftl user template files. All the template files stored in this folder will be used for code generation.	set tpl_path C:\myTemplates\
set dest_path <path></path>	This command sets the path to the destination folder that will hold the code generated according to user templates.	set dest_path C:\myMXProject\inc\
get tpl_path	This command retrieves the path name of the user template source folder	get tpl_path
get dest_path	This command retrieves the path name of the user template destination folder.	get dest_path
project toolchain <toolchain></toolchain>	This command specifies the tool chain to be used for the project. Then, use the "project generate" command to generate the project for that tool chain.	project toolchain EWARM project toolchain "MDK-ARM V4" project toolchain "MDK-ARM V5" project toolchain TrueSTUDIO project toolchain SW4STM32
project name <name></name>	This command specifies the project name	project name ccmram
project path <path></path>	This command specifies the path where to generate the project	project path C:\Cube\ccmram
project generate	Generate the full project	project generate
exit	End STM32CubeMX process	exit

Table 1. Command line summary	(continued)
-------------------------------	-------------



3.4.3 Running STM32CubeMX plug-in from Eclipse IDE

To run STM32CubeMX plug-in from Eclipse:

- 1. Launch Eclipse environment.
- Once Eclipse IDE is open, click open new perspective:
- 3. Select STM32CubeMX to open STM32CubeMX as a perspective (see *Figure 9*).
- 4. STM32CubeMX perspective opens (see *Figure 10*). Enter STM32CubeMX user interface via the Welcome menus.

To run STM32CubeMX as a standalone application on MacOS, double-click the STM32CubeMX icon on your desktop.

C/C++ (default) CVS Repository Exploring Debug GDB Trace Git Repository Exploring LTTng Kernel Planning Remote System Explorer Resource STM32CubeMX Team Synchronizing
Tracing

Figure 9. Opening Eclipse plug-in





Figure 10. STM32CubeMX perspective

3.5 Getting STM32Cube updates

STM32CubeMX implements a mechanism to access the internet and to:

- Perform self-updates of STM32CubeMX and of the STM32Cube firmware packages installed on the user computer
- Download new firmware packages and patches

Installation and update related sub-menus are available under the Help menu.

Off-line updates can also be performed on computers without internet access (see *Figure 16*). This is done by browsing the filesystem and selecting available STM32Cube firmware zip packages.

If the PC on which STM32CubeMX runs is connected to a computer network using a proxy server, STM32CubeMX needs to connect to that server to access the internet, get self-updates and download firmware packages. Refer to *Section 3.5.1: Updater configuration* for a description of this connection configuration.

To view Windows default proxy settings, select Internet options from the Control panel and select LAN settings from the Connections tab (see *Figure 11*).



DocID025776 Rev 17

Figure 1	. Displaying windows default proxy settings
(Ir	ternet Properties
Ger	eral Security Privacy Content Connections Programs Advanced
· ·	To set up an Internet connection, click Setup Setup.
D	al-up and Virtual Private Network settings
	A <u>d</u> d
	Add V <u>P</u> N
	<u>B</u> emove
	Choose Settings if you need to configure a proxy Settings
	Never dial a connection
	Dial <u>w</u> henever a network connection is not present
	Always dial my default connection
	Current None Set default
L	ocal Area Network (LAN) settings
	LAN Settings do not apply to dial-up connections. Choose Settings above for dial-up settings.
	OK Cancel Apply

Figure 11. Displaying Windows default proxy settings

Several proxy types exist and different computer network configurations are possible:

- Without proxy: the application directly accesses the web (Windows default configuration).
- Proxy without login/password
- Proxy with login/password: when using an internet browser, a dialog box opens and prompts the user to enter his login/password.
- Web proxies with login/password: when using an internet browser, a web page opens and prompts the user to enter his login/password.

If necessary, contact your IT administrator for proxy information (proxy type, http address, port).

STM32CubeMX does not support web proxies. In this case, the user will not be able to benefit from the update mechanism and will need to manually copy the STM32 firmware packages from http://www.st.com/stm32cube to the repository. To do it, follow the sequence below:

- 1. Go to http://www.st.com/stm32cube and download the relevant STM32Cube firmware package from the *Associated Software* section.
- 2. Unzip the zip package to your STM32Cube repository. Find out the default repository folder location in the Updater settings tab as shown in *Figure 12* (you might need to update it to use a different location or name).



3.5.1 Updater configuration

To perform STM32Cube new library package installation or updates, the tool must be configured as follows:

- 1. Select Help > Updater Settings to open the Updater Settings window.
- 2. From the Updater Settings tab (see Figure 12)
 - a) Specify the repository destination folder where the downloaded packages will be stored.
 - b) Enable/Disable the automatic check for updates.

odater Settings Connectio	n Parameters		
Firmware Repository			
Repository Folder			
C:\Users\JohnDoe\STM32	Cube Repository		
			Browse
Check and Update Setting	s		
Manual Check			
Automatic Check	Interval between two Checks (da	ays) 5	
		ОК	Cancel

Figure 12. Updater Settings window

- 3. In the **Connection Parameters** tab, specify the proxy server settings appropriate for your network configuration by selecting a proxy type among the following possibilities:
 - No Proxy (see Figure 13)
 - Use System Proxy Parameters (see Figure 14)
 - On Windows, proxy parameters will be retrieved from the PC system settings. Uncheck "Require Authentication" if a proxy server without login/password configuration is used.



- Manual Configuration of Proxy Server (see *Figure 15*)
 Enter the Proxy server http address and port number. Enter login/password information or uncheck "Require Authentication" if a proxy server without login/password configuration is used.
- 4. Uncheck **Remember my credentials** to prevent STM32CubeMX to save encrypted login/password information in a file. This implies reentering login/password information each time STM32CubeMX is launched.
- Click the Check Connection button to verify if the connection works. A green check mark appears to confirm that the connection operates correctly Check Connection :

Updater \$	Settings X
Updater Sett	ings Connection Parameters
Proxy Server	r Type
🔘 Use Sys	stem Proxy Parameters
Manual	Configuration of Proxy Server
Manual Conf	figuration of Proxy Server
Proxy HTTP	myproxy.mycompany.com Port 8080
Authenticatio	on Authentication 🛛 Remember my Credentials
User Login	JohnDoe
Password	•••••
	Check Connection
	OK Cancel

Figure 13. Connection Parameters tab - No proxy



opusici	Settings
Jpdater Sett	tings Connection Parameters
Proxy Serve	er Type
No Prox	ху
O Use System	/stem Proxy Parameters
Manual	l Configuration of Proxy Server
Manual Con	ifiguration of Proxy Server
Proxy HTTP	P myproxy.mycompany.com Port 8080
Authenticati	tion
🔽 Require	e Authentication 🛛 Remember my Credentials
✓ Require User Login	e Authentication 🛛 Remember my Credentials JohnDoe
Require User Login Password	e Authentication V Remember my Credentials
Require User Login Password	e Authentication V Remember my Credentials JohnDoe Check Connection

Figure 14. Connection Parameters tab - Use System proxy parameters



Updater	Settings	×
Updater Sett	ings Connection Parameters	
Proxy Serve	r Туре	
No Prox	y .	
O Use System	tem Proxy Parameters	
Manual	Configuration of Proxy Server	
Manual Cont	iguration of Proxy Server	
Proxy HTTP	myproxy.mycompany.com	Port 8080
Authenticati	n	
📝 Require	Authentication 🛛 Remember my Credentials	
User Login	JohnDoe	
Password	•••••	
		Check Connection

Figure 15. Connection Parameters tab - Manual Configuration of Proxy Server

- 6. Select **Help > Install New Libraries** sub-menu to select among a list of possible packages to install.
- 7. If the tool is configured for manual checks, select **Help > Check for Updates** to find out about new tool versions or firmware library patches available to install.

3.5.2 Downloading new libraries

To download new libraries, follow the steps below:

Select Help > Install New Libraries to open the New Libraries Manager window.
 If the installation was performed using STM32CubeMX, all the packages available for download are displayed along with their version including the version currently installed on the user PC (if any), and the latest version available from http://www.st.com.

 If no Internet access is available at that time, choose "Local File". Then, browse to

select the zip file of the desired STM32Cube firmware package that has been previously downloaded from st.com. An integrity check is performed on the file to ensure that it is fully supported by STM32CubeMX.

The package is marked in green when the version installed matches the latest version available from *http://www.st.com*.

2. Click the checkbox to select a package then "Install Now" to start the download.

See *Figure 16* for an example.


	Releases Information was last checked 4 days ago.		
Sel.	Description	Installed Version	Available Version
	STM32CubeMX Releases		
	Software to configure and manage STM32 MCUs	4.11.0	4.12.0
	STM32CubeF7 Releases		
	Firmware Package for Family STM32F7	1.1.0	1.1.0
	Firmware Package for Family STM32F7	1.0.0	1.0.0
	STM32CubeF4 Releases		
	Firmware Package for Family STM32F4	1.8.0	1.8.0
	Firmware Package for Family STM32F4	1.7.0	1.7.0
	Firmware Package for Family STM32F4	1.6.0	1.6.0
	Firmware Package for Family STM32F4	1.5.0	1.5.0
	Firmware Package for Family STM32F4	1.4.0	1.4.0
	Firmware Package for Family STM32F4 (Size : 149.93 MB)		1.3.0
:cnnic	ai Description		

Figure 16. New library Manager window



3.5.3 Downloading new library patches

To download new library patches, the procedure described in Section 3.5.2 applies.

A library patch, such as STM32Cube_FW_F7_1.4.1, can be easily identified by its version number which third digit is non-null (eg '1' for the 1.4.1 version).

The patch is not a complete library package but only the set of library files that need to be updated. The patched files go on top of the original package (eg STM32Cube_FW_F7_1.4.1 complements STM32Cube_FW_F7_1.4.0 package).

Prior to 4.17 version, STM32CubeMX copies the patches within the original baseline directory (eg STM32Cube_FW_F7_V1.4.1 patched files are copied within the directory called STM32Cube_FW_F7_V1.4.0).

Starting with STM32CubeMX 4.17, downloading a patch leads to the creation of a dedicated directory. As an example, downloading STM32Cube_FW_F7_V1.4.1 patch creates the STM32Cube_FW_F7_V1.4.1 directory that contains the original STM32Cube_FW_F7_V1.4.0 baseline plus the patched files contained in STM32Cube_FW_F7_V1.4.1 package.

Users can then choose to go on using the original package (without patches) for some projects and upgrade to a patched version for others projects.

3.5.4 Removing libraries

Proceed as follows to clean up the repository from old library versions thus saving disk space:

- 1. Select Help > Install New Libraries to open the New Libraries Manager window.
- 2. Click a green checkbox to select a package available in stm32cube repository.
- 3. Click the **Remove Now** button and confirm. A progress window then opens to show the deletion status.

Refer to Figure 17 to Figure 19 for an example.



Sel.	Description	Installed Version	Available Version		
	STM32CubeMX Releases			Ê	
	Software to configure and manage STM32 MCUs	4.11.0	4.12.0	=	
	STM32CubeF7 Releases				
	Firmware Package for Family STM32F7	1.1.0	1.1.0		
	Firmware Package for Family STM32F7	1.0.0	1.0.0		
	STM32CubeF4 Releases				
	Firmware Package for Family STM32F4	1.8.0	1.8.0		
	Firmware Package for Family STM32F4	1.7.0	1.7.0		
X	Firmware Package for Family STM32F4	1.6.0	1.6.0		
	Firmware Package for Family STM32F4	1.5.0	1.5.0		
Firmware Package for Family STM32F4 1.4.0 1.4.0					
	Firmware Package for Family STM32F4 (Size : 149.93 MB)		1.3.0	-	
echnic	al Description				
<u>STM</u> <u>Main</u>	 32CubeF4 Firmware Package V1.6.0 / 28-May-2015 Changes Add support of System Workbench for STM32 (SW4STM2 Maintenance release to fix known defects, in HAL and Proje 	32) toolchain ects		*	

Figure 17. Removing libraries

Figure 18. Removing library confirmation message

You are about to remove the follow	ng firmware pack(s) :		
Please note: Once Firmware pack wi	be removed, You will not anymore be able to	o generate projects that were based on t	his pa
- FW.F4.1.0.0 (C:\Users\frq09031\51	A32Cube\Repository\S1M32Cube_FW_F4_V1.	0.0)	
Please confirm firmware pack(s) del	tion		



DocID025776 Rev 17

Remove se	ected Firmware		
Deleting 22962	items		
Deleting Firmw	are STM32Cube_FW_F4_V1.6.0		
		Carrol	
	OK	Cancel	

Figure 19. Library deletion progress window

3.5.5 Checking for updates

When the updater is configured for automatic checks, it regularly verifies if updates are available. In this case, a green arrow icon \checkmark appears on the tool bar.

When automatic checks have been disabled in the updater settings window, the user can manually check if updates are available:

- Click the icon to open the Update Manager window or Select Help > Check for Updates. All the updates available for the user current installation are listed.
- 2. Click the check box to select a package, and then Install Now to download the update.



4 STM32CubeMX User Interface

STM32CubeMX user interface consists of a main window, a menu bar, a toolbar, four views (Pinout, Configuration, Clock Configuration, Power Consumption Calculator) and a set of help windows (MCUs selection, Update manager, About). All these menus are described in the following sections.

For C code generation, although the user can switch back and forth between the different configuration views, it is recommended to follow the sequence below:

- 1. Select the relevant features (peripherals, middlewares) and their operating modes from the **Pinout** view.
- 2. Configure the clock tree from the clock configuration view.

In the **Pinout** view, configure the RCC peripheral by enabling the external clocks, master output clocks, audio input clocks (when relevant for your application). This automatically displays more options on the **Clock tree** view (see *Figure 23*).

- 3. Configure the parameters required to initialize the peripherals and middleware operating modes from the configuration view.
- 4. Generate the initialization C code.

4.1 Welcome page

The Welcome page is the first window that opens up when launching STM32CubeMX program. It remains open as long as the application is running. Closing it closes down the application. Refer to *Figure 20* and to *Table 2* for a description of the Welcome page.





Figure 20. STM32CubeMX Welcome page

Table 2. Welcome page shortcuts

Name	Description			
New Project	This shortcut launches STM32CubeMX new project creation by opening the New project window (select an MCU from the MCU selector tab or a board configuration from the Board selector tab).			
	This shortcut opens a browser window to select a previously saved configuration (.ioc file) and loads it. When loading a project created with an older STM32CubeMX version, the user can either select migrate to migrate it to the latest STM32CubeMX available database and STM32Cube firmware version or continue .			
Load Project	Caution: Prior to STM32CubeMX 4.17, clicking continue still upgrades to the latest database "compatible" with the SMT32Cube firmware version used by the project. Starting from STM32CubeMX 4.17, clicking continue keeps the database used to create the project untouched. If the required database version is not available on the computer, it will be automatically downloaded.			
	Caution: When upgrading to a new version of STM32CubeMX, make sure to always backup your projects before loading the new project (especially when the project includes user code).			
Help	This shortcut opens the user manual.			



4.2 New project window

This window shows two tabs to choose from:

- The MCU selector tab offering a list of target processors
- A Board selector tab showing a list of STMicroelectronics boards.

The MCU selector allows filtering on various criteria: series, lines, packages, peripherals and additional MCU characteristics such as memory size or number of I/Os (see *Figure 21*).

The Board selector allows filtering on STM32 board types, series and peripherals (see *Figure 22*). Only the default board configuration is proposed. Alternative board configurations obtained by reconfiguring jumpers or by using solder bridges are not supported.

When a board is selected, the **Pinout** view is initialized with the relevant MCU part number along with the pin assignments for the LCD, buttons, communication interfaces, LEDs, etc...(see *Figure 24*). Optionally, the user can choose to initialize it with the default peripheral modes (see *Figure 25*).

When a board configuration is selected, the signals change to 'pinned', i.e. they cannot be moved automatically by STM32CubeMX constraint solver (user action on the peripheral tree, such as the selection of a peripheral mode, will not move the signals). This ensures that the user configuration remains compatible with the board.



ICU Selector Board	Select	or									
MCLL Eilters	Select	or									
Series :				Lines :		Package :					
STM32F4				↓ All		✓ LOFP 100			- M	ore Filters	•
0 = 83				Flash >= 592 (KBytes)		Ram >= 21	14 (KBytes)				
]									_		
~				128 🗼	20)48 64		Ă	256		
Paripharal Salaction				MCLIs List: 9 Itoms							
renprieral selection				A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A							
Peripherals	Nb	Max		MCU	Lines	Package	Flash	Ram	Eeprom	IO	E C
ADC			*	STM32F427VGTx	STM32F4	LQFP100	1024	256	0	83	~
ADC 12-bit	0	16		STM32F427VITx	STM32F4	LQFP100	2048	256	0	83	
ADC 16-bit	0	0	-	STM32F429VGTx	STM32F4	LQFP100	1024	256	0	83	
	0	2	-	STM32F429VITx	STM32F4	LQFP100	2048	256	0	83	
COMP		U	-	STM32F437VGTx	STM32F4	LQFP100	1024	256	0	83	
DAC				STM32F437VITx	STM32F4	LQFP 100	2048	256	0	83	
DAC 12-bit		2	-	STM32F439VGTx	STM32F4	LOFP 100	1024	256	0	83	
	Ť	-		STM32F439VITx	STM32F4	LOFP 100	2048	256	0	83	
Ethernet		<u> </u>					20.0		-		_
Ethernet FMC											
SMC											
HDMI CEC											
HRTIM			=								
I2C	0	3									
I2S	0	2									
IRTIM											
LPTIM											
LPUART											
OPAMP	0	0									
RTC											
SAI											
SDIO		-									
SPI (C)		4									
TET LCD											
		0									
6 a image	0	12									
Timer	+ č	2									
 Timer 16-bit Timer 32-bit 		~									
 Timer Timer 16-bit Timer 32-bit Touch Sensing 			And in case of the								
 Timer Timer 16-bit Timer 32-bit Touch Sensing UART 		4	-								-
 Timer Timer 16-bit Timer 32-bit Touch Sensing UART 	0	4	*								Ŧ

Figure 21. New Project window - MCU selector



New Project							
MCU Selector Board Select	or						
Board Filter							Board Description
Vendor :	,		Roar	d .	MCLI Series		
venuor:	!	ype or	Duar	u:	MCO Series :	1	Call I DE TA 94V-O
STMicroelectronics	▼.	Nucleo			All	•	
Initialize all IP with their	default Mo	ode				<<	
Peripheral Selection				Boards List	: 12 Items		
Peripherals	Nb	Max		Туре	Reference	MCU	
Accelerometer		N/A		Nucleo	NUCLEO-F030R8	STM32F030R8	MB1136 AVER SOLON
Analog I/O	0	0		Nucleo	NUCLEO-F070RB	STM32F070RB	
Audio Line In		N/A		Nucleo	NUCLEO-F072RB	STM32F072RB	
Audio Line Out		N/A		Nucleo	NUCLEO-F091RC	STM32F091RC	
 Button 	0	1		Nucleo	NUCLEO-F103RB	STM32F103RB	BUS BUS BE AND PRIVACED
CAN	0	0		Nucleo	NUCLEO-F302R8	STM32F302R8	
Camera		N/A		Nucleo	NUCLEO-F303RE	STM32F303RE	20 mm 200 1 25 25 26 20 mm 20
Compass		N/A		Nucleo	NUCLEO-F334R8	STM32F334R8	EL PANCE EL
Digital I/O	0	76		Nucleo	NUCLEO-F401RE	STM32F401RE	AD US PANES
Eeprom		N/A		Nucleo	NUCLEO-F411RE	STM32F411RE	AZ X2 ANIMALIA (STRACT) PAN (S)
Ethernet		N/A		Nucleo	NUCLEO-L053R8	STM32L053R8	
Flash Memory	0	0		Nucleo	NUCLEO-L152RE	STM32L152RE	www.st.com/stm32rucieo
Graphic Lcd Display		N/A	E				
Gyroscope		N/A					Vora Fostunos :
IrDA 🖉		N/A					Reys reatures .
Joystick		N/A					 On-board ST-LINK/V2-1
Lcd Display		N/A					 USB VBUS evt VIN evt 5V evt +3 3V
Led	0	1					STMisraelectronics Marnha connector (2 = 20)
Uight Sensor		N/A					• STMICTORIECTIONICS MOTPHO CONNECTOR : (2 X 38)
Memory Card		N/A					 STMicroelectronics Arduino connector: 10 + (2 x 8) +
Micro	0	0					 Push-buttons: User and Reset
Potentiometer		N/A					 LEDs: COM, Power, User LEDs
Pressure Sensor		N/A					
■ K3-Z3Z		U NL/A	-				
CD AM/CDD AM		N/A	-				
SKAM/SUKAM		U	-				
Speaker		N/A	Ŧ				Load User Manual Link to ST WebSite
						OK Cancel	

Figure 22. New Project window - board selector



4.3 Main window

Once an STM32 part number or a board has been selected or a previously saved project has been loaded, the main window displays all STM32CubeMX components and menus (see *Figure 23*). Refer to *Section 4.3* for a detailed description of the toolbar and menus.



Figure 23. STM32CubeMX Main window upon MCU selection



Selecting a board while keeping the peripheral default modes option unchecked, automatically sets the pinout for this board. However, only the pins set as GPIOs are marked as configured, i.e. highlighted in green, while no peripheral mode is set. The user can then manually select from the peripheral tree the peripheral modes required for his application (see *Figure 24*).



Figure 24. STM32CubeMX Main window upon board selection (Peripheral default option unchecked)



DocID025776 Rev 17

Selecting a board with the peripheral default modes option checked, automatically sets both the pinout and the default modes for the peripherals available on the board. This means that STM32CubeMX will generate the C initialization code for all the peripherals available on the board and not only for those relevant to the user application (see *Figure 25*).



Figure 25. STM32CubeMX Main window upon board selection (Peripheral default option checked)

4.4 Toolbar and menus

The following menus are available from STM32CubeMX menu bar:

- File menu
- Project menu
- **Pinout** menu (displayed only when the **Pinout** view has been selected)
- Window menu
- Help menu

STM32CubeMX menus and toolbars are described in the sections below.

4.4.1 File menu

Refer to Table 3 for a description of the File menu and icons.

lcon	Name	Description
₽*	New Project	Opens a new project window showing all supported MCUs and well as a set of STMicroelectronics boards to choose from
		Loads an existing STM32CubeMX project configuration by selecting an STM32CubeMX configuration .ioc file.
	Load Project 	Caution: When upgrading to a new version of STM32CubeMX, make sure to always backup your projects before loading the new project (especially when the project includes user code).
		Opens a new window to select the configuration file to be imported as well as the import settings.
	Import Project	The import is possible only if you start from an empty MCU configuration. Otherwise, the menu is disabled.
_		A status window displays the warnings or errors detected when checking for import conflicts. The user can then decide to cancel the import.
1	Save Project as	Saves current project configuration (pinout, clock tree, peripherals, middlewares, Power Consumption Calculator) as a new project. This action creates an .ioc file with user defined name and located in the destination folder
	Save Project	Saves current project
No icon	Close Project	Closes current project and switch back to the welcome page
No icon	Recent Projects >	Displays the list of five most recently saved projects
No icon	Exit	Proposes to save the project if needed then close the application

Table 3. File menu functions



4.4.2 Project menu

Refer to *Table 4* for a description of the **Project** menu and icons.

lcon	Name	Description
٩	Generate Code	This menu generates C initialization C code for current configuration (pinout, clocks, peripherals and middleware). Opens a window for project settings if they have not been defined previously. Note: It is recommended to backup the current projects when upgrading to a new version of STM32CubeMX. The user will be prompted to migrate to a new firmware library version if any is available. Select "Continue" to keep the
		previously used version.
	Generate Report ⁽¹⁾	This menu generates current project configuration as a pdf file and a text file.
×	Settings	This menu opens the project settings window to configure project name, folder, select a toolchain and C code generation options

Table 4. Project menu

1. If the project was previously saved, the reports are generated at the same location as the project configuration .ioc file. Otherwise, the user can choose the destination folder, and whether to save the project configuration as an .ioc file or not.

4.4.3 Pinout menu

The **Pinout** menu and sub-menus shortcuts are available only when the **Pinout** tab is selected (see *Figure 26*). They are hidden otherwise (see *Figure 27*). Refer to *Table 5* for a description of the **Pinout** menu and icons.



Figure 26. Pinout menus (Pinout tab selected)



Figure 27.	Pinout menus	(Pinout tab	not selected)

 STM32CubeMX Untitled: STM32F439VGTx File Project Window Help File Pro	[
File Project Window Help Image: Second sec	STM32CubeMX U	ntitled: STM32F439VGTx
Pinout Clock Configuration Configuration Power Consumption Calculator Configuration Configuration	File Project Window	/ Help
Pinout Clock Configuration Configuration Power Consumption Calculator Configuration Configuration Configuration Configuration		L 🕼 💭 🕂 🗕 🔍 🎐
Configuration	Pinout Clock Configu	ation Configuration Power Consumption Calculator
	Configuration	

Table 5. Pinout menu

lcon	Name	Description
2	Undo	Undoes last configuration steps (one by one)
0	Redo	Redoes steps that have been undone (one by one)
No icon	Pins/Signals Options	Opens a window showing the list of all the configured pins together with the name of the signal on the pin and a Label field allowing the user to specify a label name for each pin of the list. For this menu to be active, at least one pin must have been configured. Click the pin icon to pin/unpin signals individually. Select multiple rows then right click to open contextual menu and select action to pin or unpin all selected signals at once. Click column header names to sort alphabetically by name or according to placement on MCU.
Find	Pinout search field	Allows the user to search for a pin name, signal name or signal label in the Pinout view. When it is found, the pin or set of pins that matches the search criteria blinks on the Chip view. Click the Chip view to stop blinking.
Show user Label	Show user labels	Allows showing on the Chip view, the user-defined labels instead of the names of the signals assigned to the pins.
No icon	Clear Pinouts	Clears user pinout configuration in the Pinout window. Note that this action puts all configured pins back to their reset state and disables all the peripheral and middleware modes previously enabled (whether they were using signals on pins or not).
No icon	Clear Single Mapped Signals	Clears signal assignments to pins for signals that have no associated mode (highlighted in orange and not pinned).
No icon	Set unused GPIOs	Opens a window to specify the number of GPIOs to be configure among the total number of GPIO pins that are not used yet. Specify their mode: Input, Output or Analog (recommended configuration to optimize power consumption). Caution: Before using this menu, make sure the debug pins (available under SYS peripheral) are set to access microcontroller debug facilities.
No icon	Reset used GPIOs	Opens a window to specify the number of GPIOs to be freed among the total number of GPIO pins that are configured.



lcon	Name	Description
L)	Generate csv text pinout file	Generates pin configuration as a .csv text file
		Provides a list of MCUs that best match the pin configuration of the current project. The matching can be: – An exact match
No loop	List pinout	 A partial match with hardware compatibility: pin locations are the same, pin names may have been changed
NO ICON	MCUs	 A partial match without hardware compatibility: all signals could be mapped but not all at the same pin location
		Refer to Section 10: Tutorial 5: exporting current project configuration to a compatible MCU for details on how to use this feature.
-	Collapse All	Collapses the Peripheral/Middleware tree view
Ø	Disable Modes	Resets to "Disabled" all peripherals and middleware modes that have been enabled. The pins configured in these modes (green color) are consequently reset to "Unused" (gray color). Peripheral and middleware labels change from green to black (when unused) or gray (when not available).
+	Expand All	Expands the Peripheral/Middleware tree view to display all functional modes.
୍ରୀ	Zooming in	Zooms in the chip pinout diagram
9	Best Fit	Adjusts the chip pinout diagram to the best fit size
	Zooming out	Zooms out the chip pinout diagram
Keep Current Signals Placement	Keep current signals Placement	Available from toolbar only. Prevents moving pin assignments to match a new peripheral operating mode. It is recommended to use the new pinning feature that can block each pin assignment individually and leave this checkbox unchecked.

4.4.4 Window menu

The **Window** menu allows to access the **Outputs** function (see *Table* 6).

Table 6. Window menu

Name	Description
	Opens the MCUs selection window at the bottom of STM32CubeMX Main window.
	Opens two tabs at the bottom of STM32CubeMX main window:
Outputs	 MCUs selection tab that lists the MCUs that match the user criteria selected via the MCU selector.
	 Outputs tab that displays STM32CubeMX messages, warnings and errors encountered upon users actions.



4.4.5 Help menu

Refer to Table 7 for a description of the Help menu and icons.

lcons	Name	Description	
2	Help Content	Opens the STM32CubeMX user manual	
P	About	Shows version information	
1	Check for Updates	Shows the software and firmware release updates available for download.	
11 - -	Install New Libraries	Shows all STM32CubeMX and firmware releases available for installation. Green check box indicates which ones are already installed on you PC and up-to-date.	
×	Updater Settings	Opens the updater settings window to configure manual versus automatic updates, proxy settings for internet connections, repository folder where the downloaded software and firmware releases will be stored.	

T - 1-1 -	-	11.1.1.4	
lable	1.	нер	menu

4.5 Output windows

4.5.1 MCUs selection pane

This window lists all the MCUs of a given family that match the user criteria (series, peripherals, package..) when an MCU was selected last.

Note: Selecting a different MCU from the list resets the current project configuration and switches to the new MCU. The user will be prompted to confirm this action before proceeding.

Series	Lines	Mcu	Package	Required Peripherals	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F429VETx	LQFP100	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F429VGTx	LQFP100	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F429VITx	LQFP100	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F429ZETx	LQFP144	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F429ZGTx	LQFP144	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F429ZITx	LQFP144	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F429ZEYx	WLCSP143	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F429ZGYx	WLCSP143	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F429ZIYx	WLCSP143	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F439BGTx	LQFP208	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F439BITx	LQFP208	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F439IGHx	UFBGA176	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F439IIHx	UFBGA176	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F439IGTx	LQFP176	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F439IITx	LQFP176	RTC,SAI,SDIO	Ξ
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F439NGHx	TFBGA216	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F439NIHx	TFBGA216	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F439VGTx	LQFP100	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F439VITx	LQFP100	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F439ZGTx	LQFP144	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F439ZITx	LQFP144	RTC,SAI,SDIO	
STM32F4	STM32F429/439	STM32F439ZGYx	WLCSP143	RTC,SAI,SDIO	_
STM32E4	STM32E420/430	STM32E4307IVv	WLCSP143	RTC SALSDIO	-

Figure 28. MCU selection menu



.....

This window can be shown/hidden by selecting/unselecting **Outputs** from the Window menu.

4.5.2 Output pane

.....

This pane displays a non exhaustive list of the actions performed, errors and warnings raised (see *Figure 29*).

Figure	29.	Outpu	t pane
--------	-----	-------	--------

MCUs Selection Output
Loading: STM32F411V(C-E)Tx
Import Analysis: C:\SIM32CubeMX_Projects\Test\test.ioc project
The Mcu (STM32F429ZITx) found in the Project being imported is not the same than the Mcu (STM32F411VETx) currently edited
😳 Import error: DMA2D peripheral does not exist
Import :
Importing Pinout
Importing IP configurations
🔺 GPI0_Output has been removed: it was locked on PG13 which is no longer existing
▲ GPIO Output has been removed: it was locked on PG14 which is no longer existing
ASome Paramaters can't be imported from RCC to RCC
ACan't import parameter: TIM Prescaler Selection, it doesn't exist in current Mcu
ACan't import parameter: Power Over Drive, it doesn't exist in current Mcu
Importing project completed

4.6 Import Project window

The **Import Project** menu eases the porting of a previously-saved configuration to another MCU.

By default the following settings are imported:

- Pinout tab: MCU pins and corresponding peripheral modes. The import fails if the same peripheral instances are not available in the target MCU.
- Clock configuration tab: clock tree parameters.
- Configuration tab: peripherals and middleware libraries initialization parameters.
- Project settings: choice of toolchain and code generation options.

To import a project, proceed as follows:

1. Select the **Import project** icon **is** that appears under the **File** menu after starting a New Project and once an MCU has been selected.

The menu remains active as long as no user configuration settings are defined for the new project, that is just after the MCU selection. It is disabled as soon as a user action is performed on the project configuration.

- 2. Select **File** > **Import Project** for the dedicated Import project window to open. This window allows to specify the following options:
 - The STM32CubeMX configuration file (.ioc) pathname of the project to import on top of current empty project.
 - Whether to import the configuration defined in the Power Consumption Calculator tab or not.
 - Whether to import the project settings defined through the Project > Settings menu: IDE selection, code generation options and advanced settings.



- Whether to import the project settings defined through the Project > Settings menu: IDE selection and code generation options.
- Whether to attempt to import the whole configuration (Automatic import) or only a subset (Manual Import).
- a) Automatic project import (see *Figure 30*)

Figure 30. Automatic project import

Import Project	×
Imported Project	
C:\STM32CubeMX User Manual\	MX v4.12\Import IOC\f4_demo.ioc
Import MX Settings	
Import PCC Settings	
Import Project Settings	
Import Pinout/Clock Configuration	on/Configuration Settings
Automatic Import	
Manual Import	
✓ Import Pinning Status	
J Import Peripherals Conf	figuration
Desishered List	
Peripheral List	
From STM32F427IGHx	To STM32F401CBUx
ETH	None
CAN1	None
ADC1	✓ ADC1
ADC2	mport to ADC1
ADC3	
RCC	✓ RCC
SPI1	
SP15	V mport to SP12
SPI6	√ import to SPI3
	Try Import Cham View Disput
	Try Import Snow view Pindut
Import Status	
Loading: C:\BUCKET	S\STM32CubeMX User Manual\MX v4.12 user guide updates\Import IO
Import Analysis: C	:\BUCKETS\STM32CubeMX User Manual\MX v4.12 user guide updates\I
A The Man (STM32F	427IGHy) found in the Project being imported is not the same the
Q Import error: C	N1 peripheral does not evist
C Import error: C	TU semisterel des est enist
Import error: E	IH peripheral does not exist
4	4
	OK Cancel

b) Manual project import

In this case, checkboxes allow to manually select the set of peripherals (see *Figure 31*).

Select the Try Import option to attempt importing.



mported Project	
:\STM32CubeMX User Manual	WX v4.12\Import IOC\f4_demo.ioc
mport MX Settings	
Import PCC Settings	
Import Project Settings	
mort Pinout/Clock Configurati	ion/Configuration Settings
Automatic Import	on connigate don becango
Manual Import	
📝 Import Pinning Status	
V Import Peripherals Con	figuration
- Deriphoral List	
Periprieral List	
From STM32F427IGHx	To STM32F401CBUx
ETH	None
CAN1 ADC1	
ADC1	V ADC1
ADC2	import to ADC1
ADCS	
SDI1	
5015	V SF11
SDIE	import to SP12
5F10	
	Try Import Show View Pinout
Import Status	
Loading: C:\BUCKET	15/51M32Cubemx User Manual/MX v4.12 user guide updates/Imr
Import Analysis: (::\BUCKETS\STM32CubeMX User Manual\MX v4.12 user guide upc
The Mcu (STM32F	427IGHx) found in the Project being imported is not the s
Import error: C	AN1 peripheral does not exist
🐸 Import error: E	TH peripheral does not exist
•	

Figure 31. Manual project import

The Peripheral List indicates:

- The peripheral instances configured in the project to be imported
- The peripheral instances, if any exists for the MCU currently selected, to which the configuration has to be imported. If several peripheral instances are candidate for the import, the user needs to choose one.

Conflicts might occur when importing a smaller package with less pins or a lower-end MCU with less peripheral options. Click the **Try Import** button to check for such



conflicts: the Import Status window and the Peripheral list get refreshed to indicate errors, warnings and whether the import has been successful or not:

- Warning icons indicate that the user has selected a peripheral instance more than once and that one of the import requests will not be performed. *Figure 32* shows an example where the ADC1 instance has been selected twice.
- A cross sign indicates that there is a pinout conflict and that the configuration can
 not be imported as such. In *Figure 32*, the SPI6 instance configuration can not be
 imported on SPI3 because it conflicts with the previously selected SPI1
 configuration.

The manual import can be used to refine import choices and resolve the issues raised by the import trial. *Figure 33* shows how to complete the import successfully, that is, in this case, by unselecting the request for ADC2 and SPI1 imports.

The **Show View** function allows switching between the different configuration tabs (pinout, clock tree, peripheral configuration) for checking influence of the "Try Import" action before actual deployment on current project (see *Figure 33*).



Import Project	
Imported Project	
CulsTM22CubeMX Licer Manual	MV v4 12\Import TOC\F4 doma ior
C. prinozeubenix oser manual	
Import MX Settings	
Import PCC Settings	
Import Project Settings	
Import Project Setungs	
Import Pinout/Clock Configurat	ion/Configuration Settings
Automatic Import	
Manual Import	
Import Pinning Status	
Import Peripherals Con	figuration
Peripheral List	
From STM22E427ICHy	To STM22E401CPUty
	Nee
CAN1	None
ADC1	ADC1
ADC2	import to ADC1
ADC3	import to ADC1
RCC	RCC
SPI1	▼ SPI1
SPI5	import to SPI2
5P10	
Turney Chab a	Try Import Show View Pinout
Import Status	TH merimberal does not exist
• Import error. P	In peripheral does not exist
Import Try :	
Importing Pinout	
Atry to import 2	different configuration in the same IP
Aimport form A	DC2 to ADC1 will not be done!
🛛 SPI import fail	ed =
🕴 error: Mode	Half-Duplex Master conflicts with: [SPI1 : Mode Full-Duplex Master]
Importing IP conf:	igurations
Import project con	mpleted
	-
•	III.
	OK Cancel

Figure 32. Import Project menu - Try import with errors



Import Project		×
Imported Project		
C: \STM32CubeMX User I	/anual/MX v4.12/Import IOC/f4_demo.ioc	
mport MX Settings		
Import PCC Settings		
Import Project Settin	gs	
mport Pinout/Clock Con	iguration/Configuration Settings	
Automatic Import		
Manual Import		
Import Pipping S		
Import Periphera	Is Configuration	
Peripheral List		
CAN1	None	•
ADC1	ADC1	
(ADC2	import to ADC1	
ADC3	minimort to ADC1	
SPT1		
SPI5	V import to SPI2	
Turnet Shahar	Try Import Show View Pinout	Г
Import Status	configurations	
Import project	completed	^
import project	, compileda	
Import Try :		
Importing Pine	out	
Importing IP	configurations	_
Import project	completed	=
		*
<	III	Þ.
	OK Cancel	

Figure 33. Import Project menu - Successful import after adjustments

3. Choose **OK** to import with the current status or **Cancel** to go back to the empty project without importing.

Upon import, the Import icon gets grayed since the MCU is now configured and it is no more possible to import a non-empty configuration.



4.7 Set unused / Reset used GPIOs windows

These windows allow configuring several pins at a time in the same GPIO mode.

To open them:

- Select **Pinout > Set unused GPIOs** from the STM32CubeMX menu bar.
- *Note:* The user selects the number of GPIOs and lets STM32CubeMX choose the actual pins to be configured or reset, among the available ones.

Figure 34. Set unused pins window

• Set unused	GPIOs X
Number of GPIO	s 0 109
GPIO Туре	Input 💌
	Ok Cancel

• Select **Pinout > Reset used GPIOs** from the STM32CubeMX menu bar.

Depending whether the Keep Current Signals Placement option is checked or not on the toolbar, STM32CubeMX conflict solver will be able to move or not the GPIO signals to other unused GPIOs:

- When Keep Current Signals Placement is off (unchecked), STM32CubeMX conflict solver can move the GPIO signals to unused pins in order to fit in another peripheral mode.
- When Keep Current Signals Placement is on (checked), GPIO signals will not be moved and the number of possible peripheral modes becomes limited.

Refer to *Figure 36* and *Figure 37* and check the limitation in available peripheral modes.

Figure 35. Reset used pins window

Reset used GPIOs	
Number of GPIOs	
Ok Cancel	





Figure 36. Set unused GPIO pins with Keep Current Signals Placement checked





Figure 37. Set unused GPIO pins with Keep Current Signals Placement unchecked

4.8 Project Settings window

This Project Settings windows includes 3 tabs:

- A general project setting tab allowing to specify the project name, the location, the toolchain, and the firmware version.
- A code generation tab allowing to set code generation options such as the location of peripheral initialization code, library copy/link options, and to select templates for customized code.
- An advanced settings tab dedicated to ordering STM32CubeMX initialization function calls.

There are several ways to open the Project Settings window:

- By selecting Project > Settings from the STM32CubeMX menu bar (see Figure 38). The code generation will then be generated in the project folder tree shown in Figure 39.
- 2. By clicking **Project > Generate code** for the first time.
- 3. By selecting **Save As** for a project that includes C code generation (and not only pin configuration).



Project Settings	X
Project Code Generator Advanced Settings	
Project Settings Project Name Project1	
Project Location C:\STM32CubeMX_Projects\Projects	Browse
Toolchain Folder Location	
C:\STM32CubeMX_Projects\Project1\ Toolchain / IDE	
EWARM Generate Under Root	
MDK-ARM V4 MDK-ARM V5 TrueSTUDIO SW4STM32 Other Toolchains (GPDSC)	
Mcu and Firmware Package	
STM32F413VHHx	
Firmware Package Name and Version STM32Cube FW_F4 V1.13.1	
Use Default Firmware Location C:/STM32Cube/Repository/STM32Cube_FW_F4_V1.13.0	Browse
Ok	Cancel

Figure 38. Project Settings window



-	Photo Contraction	*		٢
€ ,	 STM32Cube projects 	 Project1 + 	✓ Search Proj	م
Organize 🔻	Include in library 🔻	Share with 💌	Burn » 🌐 🕇 🗍 🤅	
John ST I	nDoe 1M32Cube projects Project1		Name Drivers EWARM EWARM Src	4
6	items			

Figure 39. Project folder

4.8.1 **Project tab**

The Project tab of the Project Settings window allows configuring the following options (see *Figure 38*):

• Project settings: project name, location, toolchain folder for toolchain specific generated files, and toolchain to be used for project generation.

Selecting *Other Toolchains (GPDSC)* generates a gpdsc file. The gpdsc file provides a generic description of the project, including the list and paths of drivers and other files (such as startup files) that are required for building the project. This allows extending STM32CubeMX project generation to any toolchain supporting gpdsc since the toolchain will be able to load a STM32CubeMX generated C project by processing the gpdsc file information. To standardize the description of embedded projects, the gpdsc solution is based on CMSIS-PACK.

 Additional project settings for SW4STM32 and Atollic TrueSTUDIO toolchains: Select the optional *Generate under root* checkbox to generate the toolchain project files in STM32CubeMX user project root folder or unselect it to generate them under a dedicated toolchain folder.

STM32CubeMX project generation under the root folder allows to benefit from the following Eclipse features when using Eclipse-based IDEs such as SW4STM32 and TrueStudio:

- Optional copy of the project into the Eclipse workspace when importing a project.
- Use of source control systems such as GIT or SVN from the Eclipse workspace.

However, it shall be noted that choosing to copy the project into workspace will prevent any further synchronization between changes done in Eclipse and changes done in STM32CubeMX as there will be 2 different copies of the project.



- Linker settings: value of minimum heap and stack sizes to be allocated for the application. The default values proposed are 0x200 and 0x400 for heap and stack sizes, respectively. These values may need to be increased when the application uses middleware stacks.
- Firmware package selection when more than one version is available (this is the case when successive versions implement the same API and support the same MCUs). By default, the latest available version is used.
- Firmware location selection option

The default location is the location specified under the menu Help > updater settings.

Unselecting the **Use Default Firmware Location** checkbox allows specifying a different path for the firmware that will be used for the project (see *Figure 40*).

Project Settings	U			
Project Name				
Project1				
Project Location				
C:\CUBEMX\MyProjectsRep	pository			
Toolchain Folder Location				
C:\CUBEMX\MyProjectsRej	pository\Project1			
Toolchain / IDE				
EWARM		•	Generate Under Root	
Mcu and Firmware Package	9			
Mcu Reference				
STM32F412VETX				
Firmware Package Name a	nd Version			
STM32Cube FW_F4 V1.13	.1	•	Use latest available version	
Use Default Firmware	Location			
C:\CUBEMX\MyProjectsRep	pository			Browse

Figure 40. Selecting a different firmware location



The new location should contain at least a *Drivers* directory containing the HAL and CMSIS drivers from the relevant STM32Cube firmware package. An error message pops up if the folders cannot be found (see *Figure 41*).

Figure 41. Firmware location selection error message



To reuse the same *Drivers* folder across all projects that use the same firmware location, select the **Add the library files as reference** from the **Code generator** tab allows (see *Figure 42*).

<u>File Edit View Tools H</u> elp			
Organize Include in library	Share with 🔻	New folder	III • 🔟 📀
CUBEMX MyProjectsRepository	Name Drivers Project1 Project2	~	Date modified 11/17/2016 12:16 11/17/2016 12:19 11/17/2016 2:14 PM
	•	Ш	

Figure 42. Recomended new firmware repository structure

Caution: STM32CubeMX manages firmware updates solely for this default location. Choosing another location will prevent the user from benefiting from automatic updates. The user must manually copy new driver versions to you project folder.



4.8.2 Code Generator tab

The Code Generator tab allows specifying the following code generation options (see *Figure 43*):

- STM32Cube Firmware Library Package option
- Generated files options
- HAL settings options
- Custom code template options

STM32Cube Firmware Library Package option

The following actions are possible:

- Copy all used libraries into the project folder
 - STM32CubeMX will copy to the user project folder, the drivers libraries (HAL, CMSIS) and the middleware libraries relevant to the user configuration (e.g. FatFs, USB, ..).
- Copy only the necessary library files: STM32CubeMX will copy to the user project folder only the library files relevant to the user configuration (e.g., SDIO HAL driver from the HAL library,...).
- Add the required library as referenced in the toolchain project configuration file By default, the required library files are copied to the user project. Select this option for the configuration file to point to files in STM32CubeMX repository instead: the user project folder will not hold a copy of the library files but only a reference to the files in STM32CubeMX repository.

Generated files options

This area allows defining the following options:

- Generate peripheral initialization as a pair of .c/.h files or keep all peripheral initializations in the main.c file.
- Backup previously generated files in a backup directory

The .bak extension is added to previously generated .c/.h files.

Keep user code when regenerating the C code.

This option applies only to user sections within STM32CubeMX generated files. It does not apply to the user files that might have been added manually or generated via ftl templates.

• Delete previously generated files when these files are no longer needed by the current configuration. For example, uart.c/.h file are deleted if the UART peripheral, that was enabled in previous code generation, is now disabled in current configuration.

HAL settings options

This area allows selection one HAL settings options among the following:

- Set all free pins as analog to optimize power consumption
- Enable/disable Use the *Full Assert* function: the Define statement in the stm32xx_hal_conf.h configuration file will be commented or uncommented, respectively.



Custom code template options

To generate custom code, click the Settings button under Template Settings, to open the Template Settings window (see *Figure 44*).

The user will then be prompted to choose a source directory to select the code templates from, and a destination directory where the corresponding code will be generated.

The default source directory points to the extra_template directory, within STM32CubeMX installation folder, which is meant for storing all user defined templates. The default destination folder is located in the user project folder.

STM32CubeMX will then use the selected templates to generate user custom code (see *Section 5.3: Custom code generation*). *Figure 45* shows the result of the template configuration shown on *Figure 44*: a sample.h file is generated according to sample_h.ftl template definition.

STM32Cube Firmware Library Packa	age		
Copy an used infraries into the	project rolder:		
 Add necessary library files as r 	reference in the toolchain p	roject configuration file	
Generated files			
🔲 Generate peripheral initializatio	on as a pair of '.c/.h' files pe	er IP	
Backup previously generated fi	files when re-generating		
V Keep User Code when re-gene	erating		
Delete previously generated fil	les when not re-generated		
HAL Settings			
Set all free pins as analog (to o	optimize the power consum	ption)	
Enable Full Assert			
Template Settings			
Select a template to generate custo	omized code		Settings

Figure 43. Project Settings Code Generator

DocID025776 Rev 17



Use default lo	cation C:\Program Files\STMic	roelectronics\STM32Cube\ST	M32CubeMX\db\extra_tem;	Browse
Select your templa Available Templa	tes		Selected Templates	
\common_h.ftl \default_c.ftl		Add >> <td>\sample_h.fd</td> <td></td>	\sample_h.fd	
Destination Folder	ocation C:\Users\JohnDoe\STM	132Cube projects\Project1\P	roject1	Browse

Figure 44. Template Settings window



🔾 🗸 🕌 « Project1) Proje	ect1 > Search Proj >
<u>File Edit View Tools H</u> elp	
Organize 🔻 Include in library	• » 🔠 • 🔟 🔞
 JohnDoe STM32Cube projects Project1 Project1 	 Name Drivers EWARM Inc Src .mxproject Project1.ioc sample.h
7 items	

Figure 45. Generated project template

4.8.3 Advanced Settings tab

Figure 46 shows the peripheral and/or middleware selected for the project.

Ordering initialization function calls

By default, the generated code calls the peripheral/middleware initialization functions in the order in which peripherals and middleware have been enabled in STM32CubeMX. The user can then choose to re-order them by modifying the Rank number using the up and down arrow buttons.

The reset button allows switching back to alphabetical order.

Disabling calls to initialization functions

If the "**Not to be generated**" checkbox is checked, STM32CubeMX does not generate the call to the corresponding peripheral initialization function. It is up to the user code to do it.

Choosing between HAL and LL based code generation for a given peripheral

Starting from STM32CubeMX 4.17 and STM32L4 series, STM32CubeMX offers the possibility for some peripherals to generate initialization code based on Low Layer (LL) drivers instead of HAL drivers: the user can choose between LL and HAL driver in the **Driver Selector** section. The code will be generated accordingly (see Section 5.2: STM32Cube code generation using Low Layer drivers).



Driver Selector	r Advanced Settings		
IP Name		Driver	
TTM		0	
GPIO		HAL	
CRC		HAL	
USART		LL	
RCC		LL	
SAI		HAL	
LCD		HAL	
12C		HAL	
t	MY CDIO Toit	ICRIO	
		6010	
2	SystemClock Config	RCC	
3	MX_CRC_Init	CRC	
4	MX_I2C1_Init	I2C1	
-	MY LCD Init	LCD	
5	MALCO_INC		
4 5 6	MX_SAI1_Init	SAI1	
5 5 7	MX_SAI1_Init MX_TIM2_Init	SAI1 TIM2	

Figure 46. Advanced Settings window

4.9 Update Manager windows

Three windows can be accessed through the Help menu available from STM32CubeMX menu bar:

- 1. Select **Help > Check for updates** to open the **Check Update Manager** window and find out about the latest software versions available for download.
- 2. Select **Help > Install new libraries** to open the **New Libraries Manager** window and find out about the software packages available for download. It also allows removing previously installed software packages.
- 3. Select **Help > Updater settings** to open the **Updater settings** window and configure update mechanism settings (proxy settings, manual versus automatic updates, repository folder where STM32Cube software packages are stored).



DocID025776 Rev 17

4.10 About window

This window displays STM32CubeMX version information.

To open it, select **Help > About** from the STM32CubeMX menu bar.

About	X
STM32Cube	AX
Version 4.14.0	
STM32Cube V1.0	
http://www.st.com/stm32cube	
Copyright (c) 2010-2016 STMi	roelectronics
	life.augmented
Ci	se

Figure 47. About window

4.11 Pinout view

The **Pinout** view helps the user configuring the MCU pins based on a selection of peripherals/middleware and of their operating modes.

Note: For some middleware (USB, FATS, LwIP), a peripheral mode must be enabled before activating the middleware mode. Tooltips guide the user through the configuration.

For FatFs, a user-defined mode has been introduced. This allows STM32CubeMX to generate FatFs code without a predefined peripheral mode. Then, it will be up to the user to connect the middleware with a user-defined peripheral by updating the generated user_diskio.c/.h driver files with the necessary code.

Since STM32 MCUs allow a same pin to be used by different peripherals and for several functions (alternate functions), the tool searches for the pinout configuration that best fits the set of peripherals selected by the user. STM32CubeMX highlights the conflicts that cannot be solved automatically.

The **Pinout** view left panel shows the **Peripheral and Middleware tree** and the right pane, a graphical representation of the pinout for the selected package (e.g. BGA, QFP...) where each pin is represented with its name (e.g. PC4) and its current alternate function assignment if any.


STM32CubeMX offers two ways to configure the microcontroller:

- From the **Peripheral and Middleware** tree by clicking the peripheral names and selecting the operating modes (see *Section 4.11.1: Peripheral and Middleware tree pane*).
- For advanced users, by clicking a pin on the **Chip** view to manually map it to a peripheral function (see *Section 4.11.2: Chip view*).

In addition, selecting **Pinout > Set unused GPIOs** allows configuring in one shot several unused pins in a given GPIO mode.

Note: The **Pinout** view is automatically refreshed to display the resulting pinout configuration.

Pinout relevant menus and shortcuts are available when the **Pinout** view is active (see the menu dedicated sections for details on the **Pinout** menus).



Figure 48. STM32CubeMX Pinout view



4.11.1 Peripheral and Middleware tree pane

In this pane, the user can select the peripherals, services (DMA, RCC,...), middleware in the modes corresponding to the application.

Note: The peripheral tree panel is also accessible from the **Configuration** view. However, only the peripherals and middleware modes without influence on the pinout can be configured through this menu.

Icons and color schemes

Table 8 shows the icons and color scheme used in the **Peripheral and Middleware tree** pane.

Display	Peripheral status
CAN1	The peripheral is not configured (no mode is set) and all modes are available.
ADC1	The peripheral is configured (at least one mode is set) and all other modes are available
ADC3	The peripheral is configured (one mode is set) and at least one of its other modes is unavailable.
ADC2	The peripheral is not configured (no mode is set) and at least one of its modes is unavailable.
S ETH	The peripheral is not configured (no mode is set) and no mode is available. Move the mouse over the peripheral name to display the tooltip describing the conflict.
CAN1 Mode Disable	Available peripheral mode configurations are shown in plain black.
DCMI Disable DMA Disable DMA Disable Slave-8-bits-Embedded-Synchro Slave-8-bits-External-Synchro Slave-10-bits-External-Synchro Slave-12-bits-External-Synchro Slave-14-bits-External-Synchro Slave-14-bits-External-Synchro Slave-14-bits-External-Synchro	The warning yellow icon indicates that at least one mode configuration is no longer available.
Wode Disable	When no more configurations are left for a given peripheral mode, this peripheral is highlighted in red.
• LWIP • USP_DOUTCT • USP_D	Some modes depends on the configuration of other peripherals or middleware modes. A tooltip explains the dependencies when the conditions are not fulfilled.

Table 8. Peripheral and Middleware tree pane - icons and color scheme



4.11.2 Chip view

The Chip view shows, for the selected part number:

- The MCU in a specific package (BGA, LQFP...)
- The graphical representation of its pinout, each pin being represented with its name (e.g. PC4: pin 4 of GPIO port C) and its current function assignment (e.g. ETH_MII_RXD0) (see *Figure 49* for an example).

The **Chip** view is automatically refreshed to match the user configuration performed via the peripheral tree. It shows the pins current configuration state.

Assigning pins through the **Chip** view instead of the peripheral pane requires a good knowledge of the MCU since each individual pin can be assigned to a specific function.

Tips and tricks

- Use the mouse wheel to zoom in and out.
- Click and drag the chip diagram to move it. Click **best fit** to reset it to best suited position and size (see *Table 5*).
- Use Pinout > Generic CSV pinout text file to export the pinout configuration into text format.
- Some basic controls, such as insuring blocks of pins consistency, are built-in. See *Appendix A: STM32CubeMX pin assignment rules* for details.



Figure 49. Chip view



DocID025776 Rev 17

Icons and color schemes

Table 9 shows the icons and color scheme used in the Chip view.

Display	Pin information
(19)-PF3 : Reset_State	Tooltip indicates the selected pin current configuration: alternate function name, Reset state or GPIO mode. Move your mouse over the pin name to display it. When a pin features alternate pins corresponding to the function currently selected, a popup message prompts the user to perform a CTRL + click to display them. The alternate pins available are highlighted in blue.
PII0 Reset_State ETH_RX_ER FMC_D31 GPIO_Analog GPIO_Input GPIO_Output EVENT_OUT GPIO_EXTI10	List of alternate functions that can be selected for a given pin. By default, no alternate function is configured (pin in reset state). Click the pin name to display the list.
PB11 Reset_State ADC1_EXTI11 ADC2_EXTI11 ADC3_EXTI11 ETH_TX_EN I2C2_SDA TIM2_CH4 USB_OTG_HS_ULPI_D4 GPIO_Analog GPIO_Analog GPIO_Output EVENT_OUT GPIO_EXTI11	When a function has been mapped to the pin, it is highlighted in blue. When it corresponds to a well configured peripheral mode, the list caption is shown in green.
NRST	Boot and reset pins are highlighted in khaki. Their configuration cannot be changed.

Table 9. STM32CubeMX Chip view - Icons and color scheme



Display	Pin information
VDD VSS VRE VDD	Power dedicated pins are highlighted in yellow. Their configuration cannot be changed.
PF1 PF2	Non-configured pins are shown in gray (default state).
ADC3_IN6 PF8	When a signal assignment corresponds to a peripheral mode without ambiguity, the pin color switches to green.
RCC_OSC32_IN	When the signal assignment does not correspond to a valid peripheral mode configuration, the pin is shown in orange. Additional pins need to be configured to achieve a valid mode configuration.
12C2_SDA PF0 12C2_SCL PF1 12C2_SMBA PF2	When a signal assignment corresponds to a peripheral mode without ambiguity, the pins are shown in green. As an example, assigning the PF2 pin to the I2C2_SMBA signal matches to I2C2 mode without ambiguity and STM32CubeMX configures automatically the other pins (PF0 and PF1) to complete the pin mode configuration.

Table 9. STM32CubeMX Chip view - Icons and color scheme (continued)

Tooltips

Move the mouse over peripherals and peripheral modes that are unavailable or partially available to display the tooltips describing the source of the conflict that is which pins are being used by which peripherals.

As an example (see *Figure 50*), the Ethernet (ETH) peripheral is no longer available because there is no possible mode configuration left. A tooltip indicates to which signal are assigned the pins required for this mode (ADC1-IN0 signal, USART3 synchronous signal, etc...).

Figure 50. Red highlights and tooltip example: no mode configuration available

ETH	P14
Mode Disab	le 💌
FMC	
I2C1	Mode Conflict with
12C 12C	ADC3 : IN0 or/and
12C2	Active only when TIM2 has enabled the Pulse Per Second Output or/and
C Disable	ADC1 : IN1 or/and
12C3	ADC1 : IN0 or/and
1252	USART3 : Synchronous or/and
1253	ADC1 : IN2

In the next example (see *Figure 51*), the SDIO peripheral is partially available because at least one of its modes is unavailable: the necessary pins are already assigned to the I2C mode of the I2C3 peripheral.



Figure 51. Orange highlight and tooltip example: some configurations unavailable



In this last example (see *Figure 52*) I2C2 peripheral is unavailable because there is no mode function available. A tooltip shows for each function where all the remapped pins have been allocated (USART3 synchronous mode).



[
	Disable
	I2C Disable
	I2S SMBus-Aler USART3 : Mode Synchronous

4.11.3 Chip view advanced actions

Manually modifying pin assignments

To manually modify a pin assignment, follow the sequence below:

- 1. Click the pin in the **Chip** view to display the list of all other possible alternate functions together with the current assignment highlighted in blue (see *Figure 53*).
- 2. Click to select the new function to assign to the pin.

Figure 53	3. Modifying pir	assignments fro	m the Chip view
-----------	------------------	-----------------	-----------------





Manually remapping a function to another pin

To manually remap a function to another pin, follow the sequence below:

- 1. Press the CTRL key and click the pin in the **Chip** view. Possible pins for relocation, if any, are highlighted in blue.
- 2. Drag the function to the target pin.
- Caution: A pin assignment performed from the Chip view overwrites any previous assignment.

Manual remapping with destination pin ambiguity

For MCUs with block of pins consistency (STM32F100x/ F101x/ F102x/ F103x and STM32F105x/F107x), the destination pin can be ambiguous,e.g. there can be more than one destination block including the destination pin. To display all the possible alternative remapping blocks, move the mouse over the target pin.

Note: A "block of pins" is a group of pins that must be assigned together to achieve a given peripheral mode. As shown in Figure 54, two blocks of pins are available on a STM32F107xx MCU to configure the Ethernet Peripheral in RMII synchronous mode: {PC1, PA1, PA2, PA7, PC4, PC5, PB11, PB12, PB13, PB5} and {PC1, PA1, PA2, PD10, PD9, PD8, PB11, PB12, PB13, PB5}.



Figure 54. Example of remapping in case of block of pins consistency

Resolving pin conflicts

To resolve the pin conflicts that may occur when some peripheral modes use the same pins, STM32CubeMX attempts to reassign the peripheral mode functions to other pins. The peripherals for which pin conflicts could not be solved are highlighted in red or orange with a tooltip describing the conflict.



If the conflict cannot be solved by remapping the modes, the user can try the following:

- If the Keep Current Signals Placement box is checked, try to select the peripherals in a different sequence.
- Uncheck the Keep Current Signals Placement box and let STM32CubeMX try all the remap combinations to find a solution.
- **Manually remap** a mode of a peripheral when you cannot use it because there is no pin available for one of the signals of that mode.

4.11.4 Keep Current Signals Placement

This checkbox is available from the toolbar when the **Pinout** view is selected (see *Figure 26* and *Table 5*). It can be selected or unselected at any time during the configuration. It is unselected by default.

It is recommended to keep the checkbox unchecked for an optimized placement of the peripherals (maximum number of peripherals concurrently used).

The **Keep Current Signals Placement** checkbox should be selected when the objective is to match a board design.

Keep Current Signals Placement is unchecked

This allows STM32CubeMX to remap previously mapped blocks to other pins in order to serve a new request (selection of a new peripheral mode or a new peripheral mode function) which conflicts with the current pinout configuration.

Keep Current Signals Placement is checked

This ensures that all the functions corresponding to a given peripheral mode remain allocated (mapped) to a given pin. Once the allocation is done, STM32CubeMX cannot move a peripheral mode function from one pin to another. New configuration requests are served if it is feasible within current pin configuration.

This functionality is useful to:

- Lock all the pins corresponding to peripherals that have been configured using the Peripherals panel.
- Maintain a function mapped to a pin while doing manual remapping from the **Chip** view.

Тір

If a mode becomes unavailable (highlighted in red), try to find another pin remapping configuration for this mode by following the steps below:

- 1. From the **Chip** view, unselect the assigned functions one by one until the mode becomes available again.
- 2. Then, select the mode again and continue the pinout configuration with the new sequence (see *Appendix A: STM32CubeMX pin assignment rules* for a remapping example). This operation being time consuming, it is recommended to unselect the **Keep Current Signals Placement** checkbox.

Note: Even if Keep Current Signals placement is unchecked, GPIO_functions (excepted GPIO_EXTI functions) are not moved by STM32CubeMX.



4.11.5 Pinning and labeling signals on pins

STM32CubeMX comes with a feature allowing the user to selectively lock (or pin) signals to pins: This will prevent STM32CubeMX from automatically moving the pinned signals to other pins when resolving conflicts. There is also the possibility to label the signals: User labels are used for code generation (see Section 5.1 for details).

STM32CubeMX comes with a feature allowing the user to selectively lock (or pin) signals to pins. This prevents STM32CubeMX from automatically moving pinned signals to other pins when resolving conflicts. Labels, that are used for code generation, can also be assigned to the signals (see *Section 5.1* for details).

There are several ways to pin, unpin and label the signals:

- 1. From the **Chip** view, right-click a pin with a signal assignment. This opens a contextual menu:
 - a) For unpinned signals, select **Signal Pinning** to pin the signal. A pin icon is then displayed on the relevant pin. The signal can no longer be moved automatically (for example when resolving pin assignment conflicts).
 - b) For pinned signals, select Signal Unpinning to unpin the signal. The pin icon is removed. From now on, to resolve a conflict (such as peripheral mode conflict), this signal can be moved to another pin, provided the Keep user placement option is unchecked.
 - c) Select **Enter User Label** to specify a user defined label for this signal. The new label will replacing the default signal name in the **Chip** view.

2. From the Pinout menu, select Pins/Signals Options

- The Pins/Signals Options window (see *Figure 55*) lists all configured pins.
- a) Click the first column to individually pin/unpin signals.
- b) Select multiple rows and right-click to open the contextual menu and select Signal(s) Pinning or Unpinning.



PAU/WKUP	ETH_CRS		
PA1	ETH_RX_CLK		
PA2	ETH_MDIO		
PA3	ETH_COL		
🛃 PA4	DAC_OUT1	DAC1	
🛃 PA5	DAC_OUT2	DAC2	-
PA7	ETH_RX_DV		=
PBO	ETH_RXD2		
PB1	ETH_RXD3		
PB10	ETH_RX_ER		
PB11	ETH_TX_EN		
PB12	ETH_TXD0		
PB13	ETH_TXD1		
PB14	I2S2_ext_SD		
PB15	I2S2_SD		
PB9	I2S2_WS		-

Figure 55. Pins/Signals Options window

- c) Select the User Label field to edit the field and enter a user-defined label.
- d) Order list alphabetically by Pin or Signal name by clicking the column header. Click once more to go back to default i.e. to list ordered according to pin placement on MCU.

Note: Even if a signal is pinned, it is still possible however to manually change the pin signal assignment from the **Chip** view: click the pin to display other possible signals for this pin and select the relevant one.

4.11.6 Setting HAL timebase source

By default, the STM32Cube HAL is built around a unique timebase source which is the ARM-Cortex system timer (SysTick).

However, HAL-timebase related functions are defined as weak so that they can be overloaded to use another hardware timebase source. This is strongly recommended when the application uses an RTOS, since this middleware has full control on the SysTick configuration (tick and priority) and most RTOSs force the SysTick priority to be the lowest.

Using the SysTick remains acceptable if the application respects the HAL programming model, that is, does not perform any call to HAL timebase services within an Interrupt Service Request context (no dead lock issue).

To change the HAL timebase source, go to the SYS peripheral in the **Peripheral and Middleware tree** pane and select a clock among the available clock sources: SysTick, TIM1, TIM2,... (see *Figure 56*).



		CAUI	
🖨 💿 SYS			
Debug Disable		•	
···· 🔲 System Wake	e-Up		
Timebase Source	SysTick	-	
	SysTick	-	
	TIM1		
⊕- 💿 TIM3	TIM2 TIM3	Ш	
∳~ 💿 TIM4	TIM4		
	TIM5		
	TIM6		
	TIM7	Ŧ	

Figure 56. Selecting a HAL timebase source (STM32F407 example)

When used as timebase source, a given peripheral is grayed and can no longer be selected (see *Figure 57*).



🚊 💿 SYS	
Debug Di	sable
····· 🔲 Syste	m Wake-Up
Timebase	Source TIM2
🖶 💿 TIM1	
🖻 💿 TIM2	TIM2 is no longer available as Timer periph
🗈 💿 ТІМЗ	
🖻 💿 TIM4	



As illustrated in the following examples, the selection of the HAL timebase source and the use of FreeRTOS influence the generated code.

Example of configuration using SysTick without FreeRTOS

As illustrated in *Figure 58*, the SysTick priority is set to 0 (High) when using the SysTick without FreeRTOS.

Figure 58. NVIC settings when using SysTick as HAL timebase, no FreeRTOS

Priority Group	4 bits for pre-emption priority 0 bits for su	Ibpriority	 Sort by Premption 	Priority and Sub Prorit
Search	Search (Crtl+F)		Show only enable	ed interrupts
Interrupt Tab	le	Enabled	Preemption Priority	Sub Priority
Non maskable	interrupt	1	0	0
Hard fault inte	errupt	1	0	0
Memory mana	gement fault	~	0	0
Pre-fetch faul	t, memory access fault	1	0	0
Undefined ins	truction or illegal state	1	0	0
Debug monito	r	1	0	0
Time base: Sy	stem tick timer	~	0	0
PVD interrupt	through EXTI line 16		0	0
Flash global in	terrupt		0	0
RCC global int	errupt		0	0
	Enabled Pri	eemption Priority	▼ Sub Priority	v

Interrupt priorities (in main.c) and handler code (in stm32f4xx_it.c) are generated accordingly:

```
    main.c file
```

```
/* SysTick_IRQn interrupt configuration */
HAL_NVIC_SetPriority(SysTick_IRQn, 0, 0);
```

stm32f4xx_it.c file

```
/**
* @brief This function handles System tick timer.
*/
void SysTick_Handler(void)
{
    /* USER CODE BEGIN SysTick_IRQn 0 */
```

DocID025776 Rev 17



```
/* USER CODE END SysTick_IRQn 0 */
HAL_IncTick();
HAL_SYSTICK_IRQHandler();
/* USER CODE BEGIN SysTick_IRQn 1 */
/* USER CODE END SysTick_IRQn 1 */
}
```

Example of configuration using SysTick and FreeRTOS

As illustrated in *Figure 59*, the SysTick priority is set to 15 (Low) when using the SysTick with FreeRTOS.

Figure 59.	NVIC set	tings when	using Fr	eeRTOS and	SysTick as	HAL timebase

Priority Group	4 bits for pre-emption priority 0 bits fo	r subpriority	 Sort by Premption 	Priority and Sub Pro	ority
Search	Search (Crtl+F)		Show only enable	ed interrupts	
Interrupt Table	2	Enabled	Preemption Priority	Sub Priority	
Non maskable in	iterrupt	1	0	0	
Hard fault interr	upt	~	0	0	
Memory manage	ement fault	1	0	0	
Pre-fetch fault,	memory access fault	~	0	0	
Undefined instruction or illegal state		~	0	0	
Debug monitor		~	0	0	
Time base: System tick timer		~	15	0	
PVD interrupt th	rough EXTI line 16		5	0	
Flash global inte	rrupt		5	0	
RCC global inter	rupt		5	0	
					Ŧ
	Enabled	Preemption Priority	 Sub Priority 	. .	



As shown in the code snippets given below, the SysTick interrupt handler is updated to use CMSIS-os osSystickHandler function.

```
main.c file
٠
  /* SysTick_IRQn interrupt configuration */
  HAL_NVIC_SetPriority(SysTick_IRQn, 15, 0);
•
    stm32f4xx_it.c file
/**
* @brief This function handles System tick timer.
*/
void SysTick_Handler(void)
{
  /* USER CODE BEGIN SysTick_IRQn 0 */
  /* USER CODE END SysTick_IRQn 0 */
  HAL_IncTick();
  osSystickHandler();
  /* USER CODE BEGIN SysTick_IRQn 1 */
  /* USER CODE END SysTick_IRQn 1 */
}
```



Example of configuration using TIM2 as HAL timebase source

When TIM2 is used as HAL timebase source, a new stm32f4xx_hal_timebase_TIM.c file is generated to overload the HAL timebase related functions, including the HAL_InitTick function that configures the TIM2 as the HAL time-base source.

The priority of TIM2 timebase interrupts is set to 0 (High). The SysTick priority is set to 15 (Low) if FreeRTOS is used, otherwise it is set to 0 (High).

Figure 60.	NVIC setting	s when using	FreeRTOS	and TIM2 a	as HAL timebase

Priority Group	4 bits for pre-emption priority 0 bits	for subpriority	 Sort by Premption 	Priority and Sub Prority		
Search	Search (Crtl+F)		Show only enabled interrupts			
Interrupt Table	2	Enabled	Preemption Priority	Sub Priority		
Non maskable ir	iterrupt	1	0	0		
Hard fault inter	rupt	1	0	0		
Memory manage	ement fault	1	0	0		
Pre-fetch fault,	memory access fault	1	0	0		
Undefined instru	uction or illegal state	~	0	0		
Debug monitor			0	0		
System tick timer		1	15	0		
PVD interrupt th	nrough EXTI line 16		5	0		
Flash global inte	errupt		5	0		
RCC global inter	rrupt		5	0		
ime base: TIM	2 global interrupt	~	0	0		
	Enabled	Preemption Priority [✓ Sub Priority			

The stm32f4xx_it.c file is generated accordingly:

- SysTick_Handler calls osSystickHandler when FreeRTOS is used, otherwise it calls HAL_SYSTICK_IRQHandler.
- TIM2_IRQHandler is generated to handle TIM2 global interrupt.



Note:

4.12 Configuration view

STM32CubeMX **Configuration** window (see *Figure 61*) gives an overview of all the software configurable components: GPIOs, peripherals and middleware. Clickable buttons allow selecting the configuration options of the component initialization parameters that will be included in the generated code. The button icon color reflects the configuration status:

- Green checkmark: correct configuration
- Warning sign: incomplete but still functional configuration
- Red cross: for invalid configuration.

GPIO and Peripheral modes that influence the pinout can be set only from the **Pinout** view. They are read-only in the Configuration view.

In this view, the MCU is shown on the left pane by its **Peripheral and Middleware tree** and on the right pane, by the list of peripherals and middleware organized in Middleware, Multimedia, Connectivity, Analog, System and Control categories. Each peripheral instance has a dedicated button to edit its configuration: as an example, TIM1 and TIM3 TIM instances are shown as dedicated buttons in *Figure 61*.

File Brokert Michaeland Hale					
File Project window Help					
🛄 🔤 🖳 🔄 💌 🗕	+				
Pinout Clock Configuration Configuratio	n Power Consumption Calculator	•			
Configuration MiddleWares FATFS GUSB FATFS GUSB FREERTOS GUSB Cuse Class for FS IP MSC_FS FIPs		FATFS of FREE	Middlewares Tos 🦉 LWIP 🔄		
	Multimedia	Connectivity	Analog	System	Control
CAN1 Master Mode: Set CAN1 Master Mode: Set CRC Activated ODAC OUTI Configuration: Set OUTI Configuration		CAN1 Source CAN1 S	ADC1 WIJ	DMA H	TIM1 🔆

Figure 61. STM32CubeMX Configuration view

A configuration button is associated to each peripheral in the **Configuration** window (see *Table 10*).



	enale comgalation satione
Format	Peripheral Instance configuration status
	Available but not fully configured yet. Click to open the configuration window.
ETH	Well configured with default or user-defined settings that allows proceeding with the generation of corresponding initialization C code. Click to open the configuration window.
TIM4	Badly configured with some wrong parameter values. Click to display the errors highlighted in red. Other example (UART): Baud Rate 1000000 Bits/s
TIM4 Configuration Please select a Trigger Source in the Pinout view OK	Dialog box that explains source of error. It shall be fixed in another view.

Table 10. Peripheral and middleware configuration buttons

GPIO, **DMA** and **NVIC** settings can be accessed either via a dedicated button like other peripherals or via a tab in the other configuration windows of the peripherals which use them (see *Figure 62*).

Figure 62. Configuration window tabs for GPIO, DMA and NVIC settings (STM32F4 series)

SDIO Config	guration						x
Parameter S	Settings 🧹 Use	er Constants 🧹	NVIC Settings	🛷 DMA Settings	s 🚽 GPIO Settin	gs	
Search Signals Search (Crtl+)	F)				_	Show only	y Modified Pins
Pin Name	Signal on Pin	GPIO Pin State	GPIO mode	GPIO Pull-up	Maximum ou	User Label	Modified
PC8	SDIO_D0	n/a	Alternate Fun	No pull-up an	High		
PC9	SDIO_D1	n/a	Alternate Fun	No pull-up an	High		
PC10	SDIO_D2	n/a	Alternate Fun	No pull-up an	High		
PC11	SDIO_D3	n/a	Alternate Fun	No pull-up an	High		
PC12	SDIO_CK	n/a	Alternate Fun	No pull-up an	High		
PD2	SDIO_CMD	n/a	Alternate Fun	No pull-up an	High		
2 Select Pins fr	om table to confi	gure them. Mult i	iple selection is	Allowed.			
					Apply	Ok	Cancel



4.12.1 Peripherals and Middleware Configuration window

This window is open by clicking the peripheral instance or Middleware name from the **Configuration** pane. It allows to configure the functional parameters that are required for initializing the peripheral or the middleware in the selected operating mode. This configuration is used to generate the corresponding initialization C code. Refer to *Figure 63* for a Peripheral Configuration windows example.

The configuration window includes several tabs:

- **Parameter settings** to configure library dedicated parameters for the selected peripheral or middleware,
- NVIC, GPIO and DMA settings to set the parameters for the selected peripheral (see Section 4.12.5: NVIC Configuration window, Section 4.12.3: GPIO Configuration window and Section 4.12.4: DMA Configuration windowfor configuration details).
- **User constants** to create one or several user defined constants, common to the whole project (see *Section 4.12.2: User Constants configuration window* for user constants details).

Invalid settings are detected and are either:

- Reset to minimum valid value if user choice was smaller than minimum threshold,
- Reset to maximum valid value if user choice was greater than maximum threshold,
- Reset to previous valid value if previous value was neither a maximum nor a minimum threshold value,
- Highlighted in red: X 1000000 Bits/s

Table 11 describes peripheral and middleware configuration buttons and messages.

Configure the below paramet	ters :				
SDIO parameters					
SDIOCLK clock divi	de factor	0			
				Descriptio	on Pane
SDIOCLK clock divide fa	ctor		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
Parameter Description:	anu 233.				
SDIO_CK = SDIOCLK / [CLK	DIV + 2]. The output clod	k frequency can vary	between 187 KH	z and 24 MHz. It is	advised to
	alue (o) to have a maximu	In abio_ok irequency	01 2414112.		

Figure 63. Peripheral Configuration window (STM32F4 series)



Buttons and messages	Action	
Apply	Saves the changes without close	sing the window
OK	Saves and closes the window	
Cancel	Closes and resets previously s	aved parameter settings
Restore Default	 For the selected peripheral, the whole user configuration is reset is STM32CubeMX default settings without clearing the project user constants defined in the User Constants tab: STM32CubeMX default values are restored on peripheral parameter, GPIO, NVIC and DN tabs. Note: Restore default button is not available for GPIO/DMA and I windows as they address more than one peripheral. Note: Clicking Cancel after Restore Default closes the window a 	
	preserves the user conf Caution: Clicking Apply after this case the user of	<i>figuration.</i> <i>Restore Default</i> saves the changes. In riginal configuration cannot be restored.
	Shows and Hides the description	on pane
	Guides the user through the se range. To display it, moves the mouse possible values.	ttings of parameters with valid min-max
Tooltip	Parity	Even 👻
	Stop Bits	None
	ced Parameters	Even
	Data Direction	Odd UART_PARITY_EVEN
	Choose to display the field as a clicking the arrow on the right:	an hexadecimal or a decimal value by
	Timeout Time (ns)	25000000 V Decimal
Hexadecimal vs decimal values	Timeout Timeout Timeout Time (ns) TIMEOUT_time must be between 25 000 000 and 35 000 (0x00008061 Hexadecimal
	Timeout Time (ns)	0x17d7840 Decimal
	- Inteout	✓ Hexadecimal

Table 11. Peripheral and Middleware Configuration window buttons and tooltips



Buttons and messages	Action				
	By default, STM32CubeMX checks that the parameter values entered by the user are valid. You can bypass this check by selecting the option No Check for a given parameter. This allows entering any value (such as a constant) that might not be known by STM32CubeMX configuration.				
	Voltage Class Class B Bit Rate Prescaler const1 + const2 + 5) SWPMI Clock frequency 4000 kHz Bit Rate 4000 / (((const1 + const2 + 5) + 1) *4) kBits/s Transmission Buffering Mode No Software buffer Reception Buffering Mode No Software buffer Bit Rate Prescaler Since BitRate is a parameter without check, you can enter any value.				
	 Note: The validity check can be bypassed only on the parameters which values are of integer type (either hexadecimal or decimal). It cannot on parameters coming from a predefined list of possible values or on those which are of non-integer or text type. To go back to the default mode, that is decimal or hexadecimal values with validity check enabled, enter a decimal or hexadecimal value and check the relevant option (hexadecimal or decimal check). 				
	Caution: When a parameter depends on another parameter that is set to No Check :				
по спеск ориоп	 Case of a parameter depending on another parameter for the evaluation of its minimum or maximum possible value If the other parameter is set to No Check, the minimum or maximum value is no longer evaluated and checked. Case of a parameter depending on another parameter for the evaluation of its current value. 				
	If the other parameter is set to No Check , the value is no longer automatically derived. Instead, it is replaced with the formula text showing as variable the string of the parameter set to No check .				
	Parameter Settings V Layer Settings V User Constants V NVIC Settings V GPIO Settings Configure the below parameters : Search : Search (Crtl+F)				
	Synchronization for Width Horizontal Synchronization Width MY_HSYNC_VALUE pixels Horizontal Back Porch Active Width 640 pixels				
	Horizontal Front Porch 6 pixels HSync Width MY_HSYNC_VALUE-1 Accumulated Horizontal Back Porch Width MY_HSYNC_VALUE-1+7 Accumulated Active Width MY_HSYNC_VALUE-1+7+640 Total Width MY_HSYNC_VALUE-1+7+640+6				

Table 11. Peripheral and Middleware Configuration window buttons and tooltips



Buttons and messages	Action				
	If the value entered by the user is out of range, an the error will be highlighted in red along with an explanatory tooltip:				
	SWPMI1 Configuration				
	💥 Parameter Settings 🧹 User Constants 🤘	NVIC Settings 🗹 GPIO Settings 🗹 DMA Settings			
	Configure the below parameters :				
	Search : Search (CrtH+F)				
Decimal and hexadecimal	🖃 🕷 Basic Parameters				
chock tooltin	Voltage Class	Class B			
спеск юблир	Bit Rate Prescaler	🗙 300			
	SWPMI Clock frequency	4000 kHz			
	Bit Rate	3 Bit Rate Prescaler value must be between 0 and 9			
	Transmission Buffering Mode	No software buren			
	Reception Buffering Mode	No Software buffer			
	Bit Rate Prescaler				
	Diukate must be between 0 and 9.				

Table 11. Peripheral and Middleware Configuration window buttons and tooltips

4.12.2 User Constants configuration window

A **User Constants** window is available to define user constants (see *Figure 64*). Constants are automatically generated in the STM32CubeMX user project within the main.h file (see *Figure 65*). Once defined, they can be used to configure peripheral and middleware parameters (see *Figure 66*).

SDIO Configuration	x
Parameter Settings 🖋 User Constants 🚀 NVIC	C Settings 🦪 GPIO Settings 🦪 🖉 DMA Settings
Search Constants	
Search (Crtl+F)	add remove
Constant Name	Constant Value
CONSTANT_1	10
CONSTANT_2	0xff
CONSTANT_3	CONSTANT_1
CONSTANT_4	(CONSTANT_3+CONSTANT_1)*100/CONSTANT_1
CONSTANT_5	(CONSTANT_2 - CONSTANT_1)
	Apply Ok Cancel





/* Includes*/
/* USER CODE BEGIN Includes */
/* USER CODE END Includes */
/* Private define*/
#define CONSTANT_1 10
<pre>#define CONSTANT_2 0xff</pre>
<pre>#define CONSTANT_3 CONSTANT_1</pre>
<pre>#define CONSTANT_4 (CONSTANT_3+CONSTANT_1)*100/CONSTANT_1</pre>
<pre>#define CONSTANT_5 (CONSTANT_2 - CONSTANT_1)</pre>
/* USER CODE BEGIN Private defines */
/* USER CODE END Private defines */

Figure 66. Using constants for peripheral parameter settings

🖋 Parameter Settings 🗹 User Constants 🗹	🕈 NVIC Settings 🗹 DMA Settings 🗹 GPIO Settings	
Configure the below parameters :		
Search : Search (Crtl+F)	• •	
SDIO parameters		
SDIOCLK clock divide factor	CONSTANT_1	-
SDIGCI K clock divide factor		
SDIOCLK clock divide factor ClockDiv must be between 0 and 255 .		•
SDIOCLK clock divide factor ClockDiv must be between 0 and 255. Parameter Description: SDIO CK = SDIOCLK / [CLKDIV + 2]. The outpu	It clock frequency can vary between 187 KHz and 24 MHz.	It is

Creating/editing user constants

Click the **Add** button to open the **User Constants** window and create a new user-defined constant (see *Figure 67*).



A constant consists of:

- A name that must comply with the following rules:
 - It must be unique.
 - It shall not be a C/C++ keyword.
 - It shall not contain a space.
 - It shall not start with digits.
- A value

The constant value can be: (see Figure 64 for examples):

- a simple decimal or hexadecimal value
- a previously defined constant
- a formula using arithmetic operators (subtraction, addition, division, multiplication, and remainder) and numeric value or user-defined numeric constants as operands.
- a character string: the string value must be between double quotes (example: "constant_for_usart").

Once a constant is defined, its name and/or its value can still be changed: double- click the row that specifies the user constant to be modified. This opens the **User Constants** window for edition. The change of constant name is applied wherever the constant is used. This does not affect the peripheral or middleware configuration state. However changing the constant value impacts the parameters that use it and might result in invalid settings (e.g. exceeding a maximum threshold). Invalid parameter settings will be highlighted in red with a red cross.



User Constants	×
constant Name	CONSTANT_1
constant Value	10
ОК	Cancel

Deleting user constants

Click the **Remove** button to delete an existing user-defined constant.

The user constant is then automatically removed except in the following cases:

• When the constant is used for the definition of another constant. In this case, a popup window displays an explanatory message (see *Figure 68*).



Figure 68. Deleting user constant not allowed when constant already used for another constant definition

💿 Deleti	e user constant warning:	
	Cannot delete, the selected user constant is used in the definition of another constant !	
	OK Cancel	

• When the constant is used for the configuration of a peripheral or middleware library parameter. In this case, the user is requested to confirm the deletion since the constant removal will result in a invalid peripheral or middleware configuration (see *Figure 69*).

Figure 69. Deleting a user constant used for parameter configuration-Confirmation request

Delet	te user constant warning:
	The selected user constant is used in the configuration of some ips! Are you sure you want to delete it ?
	<u>Y</u> es <u>N</u> o

Clicking Yes leads to an invalid peripheral configuration (see Figure 70))



SDIO Configuration		×
🗙 Parameter Settings 🧹 User Constants 🧹	🕅 NVIC Settings 🛛 🎻 GPIO Settings 🖉 DMA Settings	
onfigure the below parameters :		
🖃 🗰 SDIO parameters		
SDIOCLK clock divide factor	CONSTANT_2	
	Apply Ok	Cancel

Figure 70. Deleting a user constant used for peripheral configuration - Consequence on peripheral configuration



Searching for user constants

The **Search Constants** field allows searching for a constant name or value in the complete list of user constants (see *Figure 71* and *Figure 72*).

Parameter Settings 💞 User Cons	stants 🔣 NVIC Settings 🥑 GPIO Settings 🚽 DMA Settings
Search Constants	
CONSTANT_4	add remove
	a
Constant Name	Constant Value
CONSTANT_4	(CONSTANT_3+CONSTANT_1)*100/CONSTANT_1

Figure 71. Searching user constants list for name

Figure 72. Searching user constants list for value

DocID025776 Rev 17



4.12.3 GPIO Configuration window

Click **GPIO** in the **Configuration** pane to open the **GPIO configuration** window that allows configuring the GPIO pin settings (see *Figure 73*). The configuration is populated with default values that might not be adequate for some peripheral configurations. In particular, check if the GPIO speed is sufficient for the peripheral communication speed and select the internal pull-up whenever needed.

Note: GPIO settings can also be accessed for a specific peripheral instance via the dedicated GPIO window in the peripheral instance configuration window.

In addition, GPIOs can be configured in output mode (default output level). The generated code will be updated accordingly.

ADC1	ADC2 ETH SDIC						
Search Signals Search (CrtH	HF)					Show on	ly Modified Pir
Pin Name	Signal on Pin	GPIO Pin State	GPIO mode	GPIO Pull-up/	Maximum out	User Label	Modified
D10	n/a	n/a	Input mode	No pull-up and	n/a		
D11	n/a	Low	Output Push Pull	No pull-up and	Low		
D12	n/a	n/a	Analog mode	No pull-up and	n/a		
D13	n/a	High	Output Push Pull	No pull-up and	Low		V
PD13 Configur	ation :						
PD13 Configur GPIO Pin Stat	ration : e		F	ligh			
PD 13 Configur GPIO Pin Stat GPIO mode	ation : e		H	ligh Dutput Push Pull			
PD 13 Configur GPIO Pin Stat GPIO mode GPIO Pull-up/i	ration : e Pull-down		۲ ا	ligh Dutput Push Pull Io pull-up and no pu	ull-down		
PD 13 Configur GPIO Pin Stat GPIO mode GPIO Pull-up/f	ration : e Pull-down		H C M	iigh Dutput Push Pull Io pull-up and no pu	ull-down		
PD 13 Configur GPIO Pin Stat GPIO mode GPIO Pull-up/t Maximum outp	ration : e Pull-down put speed		F C L	ligh Dutput Push Pull Io pull-up and no pu	ull-down		
PD 13 Configur GPIO Pin Stat GPIO mode GPIO Pull-up/I Maximum outp User Label	ration : e Pull-down put speed		F C L	iigh Dutput Push Pull Io pull-up and no pu	ull-down		

Figure 73. GPIO Configuration window - GPIO selection



Click a row or select a set of rows to display the corresponding GPIO parameters (see *Figure* 74):

GPIO PIN state

It changes the default value of the GPIO Output level. It is set to low by default and can be changed to high.

• **GPIO mode** (analog, input, output, alternate function)

Selecting a peripheral mode in the **Pinout** view automatically configures the pins with the relevant alternate function and GPIO mode.

GPIO pull-up/pull-down

It is set to a default value and can be configured when other choices are possible.

• **GPIO maximum output speed** (for communication peripherals only)

It is set to Low by default for power consumption optimization and can be changed to a higher frequency to fit application requirements.

• User Label

It changes the default name (e.g. GPIO_input) into a user defined name. The **Chip** view is updated accordingly. The GPIO can be found under this new name via the Find menu.

💿 Pin Co	nfiguration						×
ADC1 A	DC2 I2C1 I2	C2 I2C3					
Search Si Search	gnals (Crtl+F)]				Show only M	odified Pins
Pin Name	Signal on Pin	GPIO output level	GPIO mode	GPIO Pull	Maximum output speed	User Label	Modified
PB6	I2C1_SCL	n/a	Alternate Fun	Pull-up	Very High		
PB7	I2C1_SDA	n/a	Alternate Fun	Pull-up	Very High		
Select 1	Pins from table	to configure them. I	1ultiple selecti	on is Allowed	L		
Group	o By Peripheral	5			Apply	Ok	Cancel

Figure 74. GPIO Configuration window - displaying GPIO settings

The **Group by Peripherals** checkbox allows to group all instances of a peripheral under a same window (see *Figure 75*).

UM1718

	riguie	, 75. 01 10	connguia	lion group	ed by beilt	merai	
Pin Configur	ration						×
GPIO ADC I2	с						
	ļ						
Search Signals							
Search (Crtl+F	=)					Show on	y Modified Pins
Pin Name	Signal on Pin	GPIO Pin State	GPIO mode	GPIO Pull-up/	Maximum out	User Label	Modified
PB6	I2C1_SCL	n/a	Alternate Func	Pull-up	High		
PB7	I2C1_SDA	n/a	Alternate Func	Pull-up	High		
PB10	I2C2_SCL	n/a	Alternate Func	Pull-up	High		
PB11	I2C2_SDA	n/a	Alternate Func	Pull-up	High		
PA8	I2C3_SCL	n/a	Alternate Func	Pull-up	High		
PC9	I2C3_SDA	n/a	Alternate Func	Pull-up	High		
2 Select Pins fro	om table to configu	ure them. Multipl	e selection is Al	lowed.			
Group By IP					Apply	Ok	Cancel

Figure 75. GPIO configuration grouped by peripheral

As shown in *Figure* 76, **r**ow multi-selection can be performed to change a set of pins to a given configuration at the same time.

GPIO ADC I	2C						
Search Signals							1 at 10 lat
Search (Crtl-	HF)					Show	only Modified Pins
Pin Name	Signal on Pin	GPIO Pin State	GPIO mode	GPIO Pull-up	Maximum ou	User Label	Modified
' 86	I2C1_SCL	n/a	Alternate Fun	Pull-up	High		
°B7	I2C1_SDA	n/a	Alternate Fun	Pull-up	High		
PB10	I2C2_SCL	n/a	Alternate Fun	Pull-up	High		
9811	I2C2_SDA		Alternate Fun	Pull-up	Fast		V
A8	I2C3_SCL	n/a	Alternate Fun	Pull-up	Fast		V
PB11#PA8 Cor	nfiguration :						
GPIO mode							•
GPIO Pull-up/F	Pull-down		P	ull-up			•
Maximum outp	out speed		F	ast			•
User Label			GPIO_	Speed			

Figure 76. Multiple Pins Configuration



4.12.4 DMA Configuration window

Click **DMA** in the **Configuration** pane to open the **DMA configuration** window.

This window allows to configure the generic DMA controllers available on the MCU. The DMA interfaces allow to perform data transfers between memories and peripherals while the CPU is running, and memory to memory transfers (if supported).

Note: Some peripherals such as **USB** or **Ethernet**, have their own DMA controller, which is enabled by default or via the Peripheral Configuration window.

Clicking **Add** in the **DMA configuration** window adds a new line at the end of the DMA configuration window with a combo box proposing to choose between possible **DMA requests** to be mapped to peripherals signals (see *Figure* 77).

DMA Request		D : 1		
- · · ·	Stream	Direction	Priority	
Select	-			
MEMTOMEM				
SPI5_RX				
SPI5_TX				
			Add	Delete
DMA Request Settings				
			Peripheral	Memory
Mode Normal	*	Increment Address		
	shold Ope Quarter Full -	Data Width	vte –	Byte -
Use Fife Three		Data Widui	yte •	byte 🔹
Use Fifo 🗌 Thre				
Use Fifo 📄 Thre		Burst Size S	ingle 🚽	Single 👻

Figure 77. Adding a new DMA request

Selecting a DMA request automatically assigns a stream among all the streams available, a direction and a priority. When the DMA channel is configured, it is up to the application code to fully describe the DMA transfer run-time parameters such as the start address, etc....

The DMA request (called channel for STM32F4 MCUs) is used to reserve a stream to transfer data between peripherals and memories (see *Figure 78*). The stream priority will be used to decide which stream to select for the next DMA transfer.

DMA controllers support a dual priority system using the software priority first, and in case of equal software priorities, a hardware priority that is given by the stream number.



	onem			
DMA Request	Stream	Direction	Priority	
I2C1_RX	DMA1 Stream 0	Peripheral To Memory	Low	
I2C1_TX	DMA1 Stream 6	Memory To Peripheral	Low	
DMA Request Setti	ngs	Per	Add	Delete
Mode Normal	▼	Increment Add		
		Data Width Byte	-	Byte 🔻
Use Fifo	hres Half Full	bata maan		

Figure 78. DMA Configuration

Additional DMA configuration settings can be done through the **DMA configuration** window:

- **Mode:** regular mode, circular mode, or peripheral flow controller mode (only available for the SDIO peripheral).
- **Increment Add:** the type of peripheral address and memory address increment (fixed or post-incremented in which case the address is incremented after each transfer). Click the checkbox to enable the post-incremented mode.
- Peripheral data width: 8, 16 or 32 bits
- Switching from the default direct mode to the FIFO mode with programmable threshold:
 - a) Click the Use FIFO checkbox.
 - b) Then, configure the *peripheral and memory data width* (8, 16 or 32 bits).
 - c) Select between *single transfer* and *burst transfer*. If you select burst transfer, choose a burst size (1, 4, 8 or 16).

In case of memory-to-memory transfer (MemtoMem), the DMA configuration applies to a source memory and a destination memory.



MA Reque			-		
MTOMEM	st	Stream	Direction	Priority	
		DMA2 Stream 0	Memory to Memory	LOW	
				Add	Delete
	at Cattings				
MA Requ	est Settings			Src Memory	Dst Memory
)MA Requi	est Settings	_	Increment Address	Src Memory	Dst Memory
MA Requi	est Settings Normal	•	Increment Address	Src Memory	Dst Memory
MA Requi	Normal	•	Increment Address	Src Memory	Dst Memory
MA Reque Node Jse Fifo	est Settings Normal	▼ old Half Full	Increment Address	Src Memory	Dst Memory
MA Requi Node Jse Fifo	est Settings Normal	v d Half Full v	Increment Address Data Width Burst Size	Src Memory	Dst Memory

Figure 79. DMA MemToMem configuration

4.12.5 NVIC Configuration window

Click **NVIC** in the Configuration pane to open the Nested Vector interrupt controller configuration window (see *Figure 80*).

Interrupt unmasking and interrupt handlers are managed within 2 tabs:

- The NVIC tab allows enabling peripheral interrupts in the NVIC controller and setting their priorities.
- The Code generation tab allows selecting options for interrupt related code generation.

Enabling interruptions using the NVIC tab view

The **NVIC** view (see *Figure 80*) does not show all possible interrupts but only the ones available for the peripherals selected in the **Pinout and Configuration** panes. System interrupts are displayed but can never be disabled.

Check/Uncheck the Show only enabled interrupts box to filter or not enabled interrupts.

Use the **search field** to filter out the interrupt vector table according to a string value. As an example, after enabling UART peripherals from the **Pinout** pane, type UART in the NVIC search field and click the green arrow close to it: all UART interrupts are then displayed.

Enabling a **peripheral interrupt** will generate of NVIC function calls **HAL_NVIC_SetPriority** and **HAL_NVIC_EnableIRQ** for this peripheral.





WIC V	Code generation				
Priority Group	4 bits for pre-emption priority 0 bits for	subpriority	 Sort by Premption 	Priority and Sub Pror	ity
Search	Search (Crtl+F)	•	Show only enable	ed interrupts	
Interrupt Table	2	Enabled	Preemption Priority	Sub Priority	
Non maskable ir	iterrupt	V	0	0	1.
Hard fault inter	rupt	1	0	0	1
Memory manage	ement fault	V	0	0	1
Pre-fetch fault,	memory access fault	1	0	0	1
Undefined instru	uction or illegal state	1	0	0	1
System service	call via SWI instruction	1	0	0	1
Debug monitor		1	0	0	1
Pendable reque	st for system service	~	0	0	
Time base: Syst	em tick timer	~	0	0	
PVD interrupt th	rough EXTI line 16		0	0	
Flash global inte	errupt		0	0	
RCC global inter	rupt		0	0	
I2C1 event inte	rrupt		0	0	
I2C1 error inter	rupt		0	0	
SPI1 global inte	rrupt		0	0	
SPI2 global inte	rrupt		0	0	
USB On The Go	FS global interrupt		0	0	
			-	-	•
	Enabled	Preemption Priority		~	

Figure 80. NVIC Configuration tab - FreeRTOS disabled

When FreeRTOS is enabled, an additional column is shown (see *Figure 81*). In this case, all the interrupt service routines (ISRs) that are calling the interrupt safe FreeRTOS APIs, should have a priority lower than the priority defined in the

LIBRARY_MAX_SYSCALL_INTERRUPT_PRIORITY parameter (the highest the value, the lowest the priority). The check in the corresponding checkbox guarantees that the restriction is applied.

If an ISR does not use such functions, the checkbox can be unchecked and any priority level can be set.

It is possible to check/uncheck multiple rows at a time (see rows highlighted in blue in *Figure 81*).



				7		
Priority Group	4 bits for pre-emption price	ority 0 bits for	subpriority 👻	Sort by I	Premption Priority and Sub Pro	rity
Search	Search (Crtl+F)			Show of	nly enabled interrupts	
Interrupt Table		Enabled	Preemption Priority	Sub Priority	Uses FreeRTOS functions	
Non maskable int	errupt	1	0	0		
Hard fault interru	pt	1	0	0		
Memory manager	ment fault	1	0	0		
Pre-fetch fault, n	nemory access fault	1	0	0		
Undefined instruc	tion or illegal state	1	0	0		
System service ca	all via SWI instruction	1	0	0		
Debug monitor		1	0	0		
Pendable request	t for system service	1	15	0	1	
Time base: Syste	m tick timer	1	15	0	1	
PVD interrupt thr	ough EXTI line 16		5	0	V	
Flash global inter	rupt		5	0	V	
RCC global intern	upt		5	0		
I2C1 event interr						
I2C1 error interru	upt					
SPI1 global interr	upt					
SPI2 global interr	upt		0	0		
USB On The Go F	S global interrupt		5	0	V	
FPU global interru	Jpt		5	0		
						Ŧ
	Enabled Preempt	ion Priority) 🔻 Sub Priority	0 🔻 🗌 Us	es FreeRTOS functions	

Figure 81. NVIC Configuration tab - FreeRTOS enabled

Peripheral dedicated interrupts can also be accessed through the NVIC window in the Peripheral Configuration window (see *Figure 82*).

Figure 82. I2C NVIC Configuration window

- 1	W GF10 Setungs W DMA	settings
Enabled	Preemption Priority	Sub Priority
	0	0
	0	0
		I
	Enabled	Enabled Preemption Priority 0 0



STM32CubeMX NVIC configuration consists in selecting a priority group, enabling/disabling interrupts and configuring interrupts priority levels (preemption and sub-priority levels):

1. Select a **priority group**

Several bits allow to define NVIC priority levels. These bits are divided in two priority groups corresponding to two priority types: preemption priority and sub-priority. For example, in the case of STM32F4 MCUs, the NVIC priority group 0 corresponds to 0-bit preemption and 4-bit sub-priority.

- 2. In the interrupt table, click one or more rows to select one or more interrupt vectors. Use the widgets below the interrupt table to configure the vectors one by one or several at a time:
 - **Enable checkbox**: check/uncheck to enable/disable the interrupt.
 - Preemption priority: select a priority level. The preemption priority defines the ability of one interrupt to interrupt another.
 - Sub-priority: select a priority level. The sub-priority defines the interrupt priority level.
 - Click **Apply** to save changes, and **OK** to close the window.

Code generation options for interrupt handling

The **Code Generation** view allows customizing the code generated for interrupt initialization and interrupt handlers:

Selection/Unselection of all interrupts for sequence ordering and IRQ handler code generation

Use the checkboxes in front of the column names to configure all interrupts at a time (see *Figure 83*). Note that system interrupts are not eligible for init sequence reordering as the software solution does not control it.



UM1718

Enabled interrupt ta	ble	Select for init sequence ordering	📝 Generate IRQ handler	
Non maskable interru	upt			
Hard fault interrupt				
Memory managemen	t fault			
Pre-fetch fault, mem	ory access fault			
Undefined instruction	n or illegal state		V	
Debug monitor			V	
Time base: System t	ick timer		V	
Flash global interrup	t			
RCC global interrupt				
ADC1, ADC2 and AD	C3 global interrupts		\checkmark	
CAN1 TX interrupts			V	
CAN1 IX interrupts				_
I2C1 event interrup	: ordering table (interrupt ini	t code is moved after all the peripheral init c	ode)	
I2C1 event interrup Interrupt unmasking Rank	: ordering table (interrupt ini Interrupt nan	t code is moved after all the peripheral init c	ode)	
I2C1 event interrup Interrupt unmasking Rank 1	: ordering table (interrupt ini Interrupt nan Flash global in	t code is moved after all the peripheral init c ne terrupt	ode)	
I2C1 event interrupt Interrupt unmasking Rank 1 2	: ordering table (interrupt ini Interrupt nan Flash global in RCC global int	t code is moved after all the peripheral init c ne terrupt errupt	ode)	
I2C1 event interrupi Interrupt unmasking Rank 1 2 3	ordering table (interrupt ini Interrupt nan Flash global in RCC global int ADC1, ADC2 a	t code is moved after all the peripheral init c ne terrupt errupt and ADC3 global interrupts	ode)	
I2C1 event interrupi Interrupt unmasking Rank 1 2 3 4	ordering table (interrupt ini Interrupt nan Flash global in RCC global int ADC1, ADC2 a CAN1 TX inter	t code is moved after all the peripheral init c ne terrupt errupt and ADC3 global interrupts rupts	ode)	

Figure 83. NVIC Code generation – All interrupts enabled

Default initialization sequence of interrupts

By default, the interrupts are enabled as part of the peripheral MSP initialization function, after the configuration of the GPIOs and the enabling of the peripheral clock. This is shown in the CAN example below, where HAL_NVIC_SetPriority and HAL_NVIC_EnableIRQ functions are called within stm32xxx_hal_msp.c file inside the peripheral msp_init function.

```
Interrupt enabling code is shown in green.
```

```
void HAL_CAN_MspInit(CAN_HandleTypeDef* hcan)
{
GPI0_InitTypeDef GPI0_InitStruct;
if(hcan->Instance==CAN1)
{
    /* Peripheral clock enable */
    __CAN1_CLK_ENABLE();
    /**CAN1 GPI0 Configuration
```

DocID025776 Rev 17


```
PD0
           ----> CAN1 RX
  PD1
           ----> CAN1_TX
   */
  GPIO_InitStruct.Pin = GPIO_PIN_0 | GPIO_PIN_1;
  GPIO_InitStruct.Mode = GPIO_MODE_AF_PP;
  GPIO_InitStruct.Pull = GPIO_NOPULL;
  GPIO_InitStruct.Speed = GPIO_SPEED_FREQ_VERY_HIGH;
  GPIO_InitStruct.Alternate = GPIO_AF9_CAN1;
  HAL_GPIO_Init(GPIOD, &GPIO_InitStruct);
/* Peripheral interrupt init */
  HAL_NVIC_SetPriority(CAN1_TX_IRQn, 2, 2);
  HAL_NVIC_EnableIRQ(CAN1_TX_IRQn);
  }
 }
  For EXTI GPIOs only, interrupts are enabled within the MX GPIO Init function:
 /*Configure GPIO pin : MEMS_INT2_Pin */
  GPIO_InitStruct.Pin = MEMS_INT2_Pin;
```

```
GPIO_InitStruct.Mode = GPIO_MODE_EVT_RISING;
GPIO_InitStruct.Pull = GPIO_NOPULL;
HAL_GPIO_Init(MEMS_INT2_GPIO_Port, &GPIO_InitStruct);
```

```
/* EXTI interrupt init*/
HAL_NVIC_SetPriority(EXTI15_10_IRQn, 0, 0);
HAL_NVIC_EnableIRQ(EXTI15_10_IRQn);
```

For some peripherals, the application still needs to call another function to actually activate the interruptions. Taking the timer peripheral as an example, the function HAL_TIM_IC_Start_IT needs to be called to start the Timer input capture (IC) measurement in interrupt mode.

Configuration of interrupts initialization sequence

Checking **Select for Init sequence ordering** for a set of peripherals moves the HAL_NVIC function calls for each peripheral to a same dedicated function, named **MX_NVIC_Init**, defined in the main.c. Moreover, the HAL_NVIC functions for each peripheral are called in the order specified in the **Code generation** view bottom part (see *Figure 84*).

As an example, the configuration shown in *Figure 84* generates the following code:

```
/** NVIC Configuration
*/
void MX_NVIC_Init(void)
{
    /* CAN1_TX_IRQn interrupt configuration */
HAL_NVIC_SetPriority(CAN1_TX_IRQn, 2, 2);
HAL_NVIC_EnableIRQ(CAN1_TX_IRQn);
    /* PVD_IRQn interrupt configuration */
HAL_NVIC_SetPriority(PVD_IRQn, 0, 0);
```



DocID025776 Rev 17

```
HAL_NVIC_EnableIRQ(PVD_IRQn);
/* FLASH_IRQn interrupt configuration */
HAL_NVIC_SetPriority(FLASH_IRQn, 0, 0);
HAL_NVIC_EnableIRQ(CAN1_IRQn);
/* RCC_IRQn interrupt configuration */
HAL_NVIC_SetPriority(RCC_IRQn, 0, 0);
HAL_NVIC_EnableIRQ(CAN1_IRQn);
/* ADC_IRQn interrupt configuration */
HAL_NVIC_SetPriority(ADC_IRQn, 0, 0);
HAL_NVIC_EnableIRQ(ADC_IRQn, 0, 0);
HAL_NVIC_EnableIRQ(ADC_IRQn);
}
```

Figure 84. NVIC Code generation – Interrupt initialization sequence configuration

Non maskable interru		Select for init sequence ordering	Cenerate IRO handler
von maskable interru	uet.	Select for mit sequence of dering	
In and family in house with	Jpt		
Hard fault interrupt	1 C . 11		V
Memory managemen			
Pre-retch rault, mem	ory access fault		
Dobug magitar	for liegal state		
Time base: System t	ick timer		
WD interrupt throws	h FYTI line 16		
Flash global interrup	1		
RCC global interrupt	•		
ADC1, ADC2 and AD	C3 global interrupts		
CAN1 TX interrupts			
TIM1 capture compa	re interrupt		
EXTL line[15:10] inte	rrunts		
Rank	Interrupt nam	ie	
Rank 1	Interrupt nam CAN1 ¹ X interr	e upts	
Rank 1 2	Interrupt nam CAN1 X interr PVD interrupt t	e upts hrough EXTI line 16	,
Rank 1 2 3	Interrupt nam CAN1 X interr PVD interrupt t Flash gobal int	ie upts hrough EXTI line 16 terrupt	
Rank 1 2 3 4	Interrupt nam CAN1_X interr PVD interrupt t Flash g obal int RCC gl vbal int	ie upts through EXTI line 16 terrupt errupt	

Interrupts handler code generation

DocID025776 Rev 17

By default, STM32CubeMX generates interrupt handlers within the stm32xxx_it.c file. As an example:

```
void NMI_Handler(void)
{
    HAL_RCC_NMI_IRQHandler();
}
void CAN1_TX_IRQHandler(void)
{
    HAL_CAN_IRQHandler(&hcan1);
}
```

The column **Generate IRQ Handler** allows controlling whether the interrupt handler function call shall be generated or not. Unselecting CAN1_TX and NMI interrupts from the **Generate IRQ Handler** column as shown in *Figure 84* removes the code mentioned earlier from the stm32xxx_it.c file.

inte comgaaton			
NVIC Code generation			
Enabled interrupt table	Select for init sequence ordering	Cenerate IRQ handler	
Non maskable interrupt			
Hard fault interrupt			
Memory management fault			
Pre-fetch fault, memory access fault		V	
Indefined instruction or illegal state		V	
ebug monitor			
ime base: System tick timer		V	
VD interrupt through EXTI line 16			
lash global interrupt			
CC global interrupt			
DC1, ADC2 and ADC3 global interrupts			
AN1 TX interrupts			
terrupt unmasking ordering table (interrupt in	nit code is moved after all the peripheral init co	de)	
nterrupt unmasking ordering table (interrupt ir Rank	nit code is moved after all the peripheral init co Interrupt name	de)	-
nterrupt unmasking ordering table (interrupt ir Rank	nit code is moved after all the peripheral init co	de)	
iterrupt unmasking ordering table (interrupt ir Rank	nit code is moved after all the peripheral init co	de)	
iterrupt unmasking ordering table (interrupt ir Rank	nit code is moved after all the peripheral init co	de)	
terrupt unmasking ordering table (interrupt ir tank	nit code is moved after all the peripheral init co	de)	
terrupt unmasking ordering table (interrupt ir Rank	nit code is moved after all the peripheral init co	ide)	•
nterrupt unmasking ordering table (interrupt in Rank	nit code is moved after all the peripheral init co	ide)	
iterrupt unmasking ordering table (interrupt ir Rank	nit code is moved after all the peripheral init co	ide)	
nterrupt unmasking ordering table (interrupt in Rank	nit code is moved after all the peripheral init co Interrupt name	ide)	
nterrupt unmasking ordering table (interrupt in Rank	nit code is moved after all the peripheral init co Interrupt name	ide) ply Ok Cance	

Figure 85. NVIC Code generation – IRQ Handler generation



4.12.6 FreeRTOS middleware configuration view

Through STM32CubeMX FreeRTOS configuration window, the user can configure all the resources required for a real-time OS application and reserve the corresponding heap. FreeRTOS elements are defined and created in the generated code using CMSIS-RTOS API functions. Follow the sequence below:

- 1. In the **Configuration** tab, enable FreeRTOS from the tree view.
- 2. Click FreeRTOS in the **Configuration** pane to open the FreeRTOS configuration window (see *Figure 86*).

All tabs but the **User Constants** tab allow configuring FreeRTOS native configuration parameters and objects, such as tasks, timers, queues, and semaphores.

The **Config parameters** values allow configuring Kernel and Software settings.

The **Include parameters** tab allows selecting only the API functions required by the application and thus optimizing the code size.

Both Config and Include parameters will be part of the **FreeRTOSConfig.h** file.

I	User Constants Tasks and Queues	Timers and Semaphores V FreeRTOS Heap Usage
	Config parameters	Include parameters
Configure	e the following parameters:	
Search :	Search (Crtl+E)	
Vorei		
e versio	CMSIS-PTOS version	1.02
	EreePTOS version	8.2.3
🖃 Kerne		0.2.3
- Acria		Enabled
	CPU CLOCK HZ	SystemCoreClock
	TICK RATE HZ	1000
	MAX_PRIORITIES	7
	MINIMAL_STACK_SIZE	128 Words
	MAX_TASK_NAME_LEN	16
	USE_16_BIT_TICKS	Disabled
	IDLE_SHOULD_YIELD	Enabled
	USE_MUTEXES	Enabled

Figure 86. FreeRTOS configuration view



Tasks and Queues Tab

As any RTOS, FreeRTOS allows structuring a real-time application into a set of independent tasks, with only one task being executed at a given time. Queues are meant for inter-task communications: they allow to exchange messages between tasks or between interrupts and tasks.

In STM32CubeMX, the **FreeRTOS Tasks and Queues** tab allows creating and configuring such tasks and queues (see *Figure 87*). The corresponding initialization code will be generated within main.c or freeRTOS.c if the option "generate code as pair of .c/.h files per peripherals and middleware" is set in the **Project Settings** menu.

The corresponding initialization code will be generated within main.c by default or within freeRTOS.c if the option "generate code as pair of .c/.h files per peripherals and middleware" is set in the Project Settings menu.

Tasks				
Name	Priority	Stack Size (Words)	Entry Function	Code Generation Option
defaultTask	osPriorityNormal	128	StartDefaultTask	Default
Fask_A	osPriorityHigh	128	StartTask_A	Default
Task_B	osPriorityLow	256	StartTask_B	Default
Queues		Queue Size	Item Size	Add Delete
Queues Name nyQueue 1	1	Queue Size	Item Size	Add Delete
Queues Name nyQueue_1 nyQueue_2	1	Queue Size 6 2	Item Size 4 2	Add Delete

Figure 87. FreeRTOS: configuring tasks and queues

Tasks

Under the **Tasks** section, click the Add button to open the **New Task** window where task **name**, **priority**, **stack size** and **entry function** can be configured (see *Figure 88*). These settings can be updated at any time: double-clicking a task row opens again the new task window for editing.

The entry function can be generated as weak or external:

- When the task is generated as weak, the user can propose another definition than the one generated by default.
- When the task is **extern**, it is up to the user to provide its function definition.

By default, the function definition is generated including user sections to allow customization.

Queues

Under the **Queues** section, click the **Add** button to open the **New Queue** window where the queue **name**, **size** and **item size** can be configured (see *Figure 88*). The



queue size corresponds to the maximum number of items that the queue can hold at a time, while the item size is the size of each data item stored in the queue. The item size can be expressed either in number of bytes or as a data type:

- 1 byte for uint8_t, int8_t, char and portCHAR types
- 2 bytes for uint16_t, int16_t, short and portSHORT types
- 4 bytes for uint32_t, int32_t, int, long and float
- 8 bytes for uint64_t, int64_t and double

By default, the FreeRTOS heap usage calculator uses 4 bytes when the item size can not be automatically derived from user input.

These settings can be updated at any time: double-clicking a queue row opens again the new queue window for editing.

FREEKTOS Configuration	
🖉 Config parameters 🛛 🖋 Include parameters 🛛 🖋 User Co	onstants 🗹 Tasks and Queues 🗹 Timers and Semaphores 💥 FreeRTOS Heap Usage
	2↓ 🖭 [
Summary	
AP STILL AVAILABLE	0 Bytes
OTAL HEAP USED	19888 Bytes
Total amount for tasks	14816 Bytes
Total amount for queues	724 Bytes
Total amount for timers	96 Bytes
Fotal amount for mutexes and semaphores	352 Bytes
FreeRTOS tasks	
dle task (FreeRTOS internal)	632 Bytes
Timer service task (FreeRTOS internal)	1144 Bytes
defaultTask	8920 Bytes
nyTask02	4120 Bytes
FreeRTOS queues	
imer command queue (FreeRTOS internal)	212 Bytes
nyQueue01	512 Bytes
FreeRTOS timers	
nyTimer01	48 Bytes
nyTimer02	48 Bytes
FreeRTOS mutexes ans semaphores	
nyMutex01	88 Bytes
nyRecursiveMutex01	88 Bytes
myBinarySem01	88 Bytes
myCountingSem01	88 Bytes
tal amount of the heap used by known objects (user object ARNING rrent computed value is greater than the configTOTAL_HEA avoid runtime issues, you should increase config_TOTAL_HEA chance the Memory Management scheme to heap 3	s, internal freertos objects) AP_SIZE value set in Config parameters tab IEAP_SIZE, remove/adjust some defined objects (tasks, queues, timers, mutexes, semaphores)
ore about FreeRTOS Heap: eeRTOS uses a region of memory called Heap (into the RAM eating variables. reeRTOS heap is different than the system heap defined at be total amount of that available hean space is set by confi	I) to allocate memory for tasks, queues, timers, semaphores, mutexes and when dynamically t the compiler level) inTOTAL HEAP SIZE which is defined in FreeRTOSConfig.b.
	Apply Ok Cancel

Figure 88. FreeRTOS: creating a new task



The following code snippet shows the generated code corresponding to *Figure 87: FreeRTOS: configuring tasks and queues.*

```
/* Create the thread(s) */
 /* definition and creation of defaultTask */
 osThreadDef(defaultTask, StartDefaultTask, osPriorityNormal, 0, 128);
 defaultTaskHandle = osThreadCreate(osThread(defaultTask), NULL);
 /* definition and creation of Task_A */
 osThreadDef(Task_A, StartTask_A, osPriorityHigh, 0, 128);
 Task_AHandle = osThreadCreate(osThread(Task_A), NULL);
 /* definition and creation of Task_B */
 osThreadDef(Task_B, StartTask_B, osPriorityLow, 0, 256);
 Task_BHandle = osThreadCreate(osThread(Task_B), NULL);
 /* Create the queue(s) */
 /* definition and creation of myQueue_1 */
 osMessageQDef(myQueue_1, 16, 4);
 myQueue_1Handle = osMessageCreate(osMessageQ(myQueue_1), NULL);
 /* definition and creation of myQueue_2 */
 osMessageQDef(myQueue_2, 32, 2);
 myQueue_2Handle = osMessageCreate(osMessageQ(myQueue_2), NULL);
```

Timers, Mutexes and Semaphores

FreeRTOS timers, mutexes and semaphores can be configured via the FreeRTOS **Timers and Semaphores** tab (see *Figure 89*).

Under each object dedicated section, clicking the **Add** button to open the corresponding **New <object>** window where the object specific parameters can be specified. Object settings can be modified at any time: double- clicking the relevant row opens again the **New <object>** window for edition.

Note: Expand the window if the newly created objects are not visible.



FREERTOS Configuration				×
🖋 Config parameters 🛛 🎻 Inc	lude parameters 🔗 User Constants 🔗 Task	s and Queues 🗹 Timers and Semaphores	🖋 FreeRTOS Heap Usage	
Timers				
Name	Callback	Туре	Code Generation Option	
myTimer01	Callback01	osTimerPeriodic	Default	-
myTimer02	Callback02	osTimerOnce	Default	•
			Add	elete
Mutexes				
Name				
myMutex01				
			Add	elete
Recursive Mutexes				
Name				
myRecursiveMutex01				
			Add D	elete
Binary Semaphores				
Name				
myBinarySem01				
			Add D	elete
Counting Semanhores				
Name		Count		
myCouptingSem01		Zount		
inycountingsenio i		/		
			Add D	elete

Figure 89. FreeRTOS - Configuring timers, mutexes and semaphores

Timers

Prior to creating timers, their usage (USE_TIMERS definition) must be enabled in the **software timer definitions section** of the **Configuration parameters** tab. In the same section, timer task priority, queue length and stack depth can be also configured.

The timer can be created to be one-shot (run once) or auto-reload (periodic). The timer name and the corresponding callback function name must be specified. It is up to the user to fill the callback function code and to specify the timer period (time between the timer being started and its callback function being executed) when calling the CMSIS-RTOS osTimerStart function.

Mutexes/Semaphores

Prior to creating mutexes, recursive mutexes and counting semaphores, their usage (USE_MUTEXES, USE_RECURSIVE_MUTEXES,

USE_COUNTING_SEMAPHORES definitions) must be enabled within the **Kernel** settings section of the **Configuration parameters** tab.

The following code snippet shows the generated code corresponding to *Figure 89: FreeRTOS - Configuring timers, mutexes and semaphores*).

/* Create the semaphores(s) */

```
/* definition and creation of myBinarySem01 */
osSemaphoreDef(myBinarySem01);
myBinarySem01Handle = osSemaphoreCreate(osSemaphore(myBinarySem01), 1);
```

/* definition and creation of myCountingSem01 */

DocID025776 Rev 17

```
osSemaphoreDef(myCountingSem01);
 myCountingSem01Handle = osSemaphoreCreate(osSemaphore(myCountingSem01),
7);
    /* Create the timer(s) */
  /* definition and creation of myTimer01 */
 osTimerDef(myTimer01, Callback01);
 myTimer01Handle = osTimerCreate(osTimer(myTimer01), osTimerPeriodic,
NULL);
  /* definition and creation of myTimer02 */
 osTimerDef(myTimer02, Callback02);
 myTimer02Handle = osTimerCreate(osTimer(myTimer02), osTimerOnce, NULL);
  /* Create the mutex(es) */
  /* definition and creation of myMutex01 */
 osMutexDef(myMutex01);
 myMutex01Handle = osMutexCreate(osMutex(myMutex01));
  /* Create the recursive mutex(es) */
  /* definition and creation of myRecursiveMutex01 */
 osMutexDef(myRecursiveMutex01);
 myRecursiveMutex01Handle =
osRecursiveMutexCreate(osMutex(myRecursiveMutex01));
```

FreeRTOS heap usage

The **FreeRTOS Heap usage** tab displays the heap currently used and compares it to the TOTAL_HEAP_SIZE parameter set in the **Config Parameters** tab. When the total heap used crosses the TOTAL_HEAP_SIZE maximum threshold, it is shown in red and a red cross appears on the tab (see *Figure 90*).



Config parameters / Include parameters /	User Constants 🔣 Tasks and Queues 🔣 Timers and Semaphores 🐺 FreeRTOS Heap Usage
Summary	
HEAP STILL AVAILABLE	0 Bytes
TOTAL HEAP USED	19888 Bytes
Total amount for tasks	14816 Bytes
Total amount for queues	724 Bytes
Total amount for timers	96 Bytes
Total amount for mutexes and semaphores	352 Bytes
FreeRTOS tasks	
Idle task (FreeRTOS internal)	632 Bytes
Timer service task (FreeRTOS internal)	1144 Bytes
defaultTask	8920 Bytes
myTask02	4120 Bytes
FreeRTOS queues	
Timer command queue (FreeRTOS internal)	212 Bytes
myQueue01	512 Bytes
FreeRTOS timers	
myTimer01	48 Bytes
myTimer02	48 Bytes
FreeRTOS mutexes ans semaphores	
myMutex01	88 Bytes
myRecursiveMutex01	88 Bytes
myBinarySem01	88 Bytes
myCountingSem01	88 Bytes
TOTAL HEAP USED Total amount of the heap used by known objects (use WARNING Current computed value is greater than the configTO To avoid runtime issues, you should increase config_T or change the Memory Management scheme to heap.	er objects, internal freertos objects) TAL_HEAP_SIZE value set in Config parameters tab TOTAL_HEAP_SIZE, remove/adjust some defined objects (tasks, queues, timers, mutexes, semaphores) 3
More about FreeRTOS Heap: FreeRTOS uses a region of memory called Heap (into creating variables. (FreeRTOS heap is different than the system heap de The total answer of the total variable heap areas is and the	the RAM) to allocate memory for tasks, queues, timers, semaphores, mutexes and when dynamically efined at the compiler level

Figure 90. FreeRTOS Heap usage



4.13 Clock tree configuration view

STM32CubeMX **Clock configuration** window (see *Figure 91*) provides a schematic overview of the clock paths, clock sources, dividers, and multipliers. Drop-down menus and buttons allow modifying the actual clock tree configuration to meet user application requirements.

Actual clock speeds are displayed and active. The clock signals that are used are highlighted in blue.

Out-of-range configured values are highlighted in red to flag potential issues. A solver feature is proposed to automatically resolve such configuration issues (see *Figure 92*).

Reverse path is supported: just enter the required clock speed in the blue filed and STM32CubeMX will attempt to reconfigure multipliers and dividers to provide the requested value. The resulting clock value can then be locked by right clicking the field to prevent modifications.

STM32CubeMX generates the corresponding initialization code:

- main.c with relevant HAL_RCC structure initializations and function calls
- stm32xxxx_hal_conf.h for oscillator frequencies and V_{DD} values.

4.13.1 Clock tree configuration functions

External clock sources

When external clock sources are used, the user must previously enable them from the **Pinout** view available under the RCC peripheral.

Peripheral clock configuration options

Some other paths, corresponding to clock peripherals, are grayed out. To become active, the peripheral must be properly configured in the **Pinout** view (e.g. USB). This view allows to:

• Enter a frequency value for the CPU Clock (HCLK), buses or peripheral clocks STM32CubeMX tries to propose a clock tree configuration that reaches the desired frequency while adjusting prescalers and dividers and taking into account other peripheral constraints (such as USB clock minimum value). If no solution can be found,



STM32CubeMX proposes to switch to a different clock source or can even conclude that no solution matches the desired frequency.

Lock the frequency fields for which the current value should be preserved Right click a frequency field and select Lock to preserve the value currently assigned when STM32CubeMX will search for a new clock configuration solution.

The user can unlock the locked frequency fields when the preservation is no longer necessary.

- Select the clock source that will drive the system clock (SYSCLK)
 - External oscillator clock (HSE) for a user defined frequency.
 - Internal oscillator clock (HSI) for the defined fixed frequency.
 - Main PLL clock
- Select secondary sources (as available for the product)
 - Low-speed internal (LSI) or external (LSE) clock
 - I2S input clock

- ...

- Select prescalers, dividers and multipliers values.
- Enable the Clock Security system (CSS) on HSE when it is supported by the MCU This feature is available only when the HSE clock is used as the system clock source directly or indirectly through the PLL. It allows detecting HSE failure and inform the software about it, thus allowing the MCU to perform rescue operations.
- Enable the CSS on LSE when it is supported by the MCU
 This feature is available only when the LSE and LSI are enabled and after the RTC or LCD clock sources have been selected to be either LSE or LSI.
- Reset the Clock tree default settings by using the toolbar Reset button (⁽⁽⁾)): This feature reloads STM32CubeMX default clock tree configuration.
- Undo/Redo user configuration steps by using the toolbar Undo/Redo buttons ()
- Detect and resolve configuration issues

Erroneous clock tree configurations are detected prior to code generation. Errors are highlighted in red and the **Clock Configuration** view is marked with a red cross (see *Figure 92*).

Issues can be resolved manually or automatically by clicking the **Resolve Clock Issue** button (0) which is enabled only if issues have been detected.

The underlying resolution process follows a specific sequence:

- a) Setting HSE frequency to its maximum value (optional).
- b) Setting HCLK frequency then peripheral frequencies to a maximum or minimum value (optional).
- c) Changing multiplexers inputs (optional).
- d) Finally, iterating through multiplier/dividers values to fix the issue. The clock tree is cleared from red highlights if a solution is found. Otherwise an error message is displayed.
- Note: To be available from the clock tree, external clocks, I2S input clock, and master clocks shall be enabled in RCC configuration in the **Pinout** view. This information is also available as tooltips.



The tool will automatically perform the following operations:

- Adjust bus frequencies, timers, peripherals and master output clocks according to user selection of clock sources, clock frequencies and prescalers/multipliers/dividers values.
- Check the validity of user settings.
- Highlight invalid settings in red and provide tooltips to guide the user to achieve a valid configuration.

The Clock tree view is adjusted according to the RCC settings (configured in RCC pinout and configuration views) and vice versa:

- If in RCC **Pinout** view, the external and output clocks are enabled, they become configurable in the clock tree view.
- If in RCC Configuration view, the Timer prescaler is enabled, the choice of Timer clocks multipliers will be adjusted.

Conversely, the clock tree configuration may affect some RCC parameters in the configuration view:

- Flash latency: number of wait states automatically derived from V_{DD} voltage, HCLK frequency, and power over-drive state.
- Power regulator voltage scale: automatically derived from HCLK frequency.
- Power over-drive is enabled automatically according to HCLK frequency. When the
 power drive is enabled, the maximum possible frequency values for AHB and APB
 domains are increased. They are displayed in the Clock tree view.

The default optimal system settings that is used at startup are defined in the *system_stm32f4xx.c* file. This file is copied by STM32CubeMX from the STM32CubeF4 firmware package. The switch to user defined clock settings is done afterwards in the main function.

Figure 91 gives an example of Clock tree configuration view for an STM32F429x MCU and *Table 12* describes the widgets that can be used to configure each clock.





Figure 91. STM32F429xx Clock Tree configuration view





DocID025776 Rev 17

Format	Configuration status of the Peripheral Instance
HSI RC 16 16 MHz	Active clock sources
Audio Clock Input.	Unavailable settings are blurred or grayed out (clock sources, dividers,)
AHB Prescaler	Gray drop down lists for prescalers, dividers, multipliers selection.
	Multiplier selection
HSE OSC 25 4-26MHz	User defined frequency values
HCLK (MHz) 48	Automatically derived frequency values
16	User-modifiable frequency field
► 10 To toos (MHz) lock Vnlock	Right click blue border rectangles, to lock/unlock a frequency field. Lock to preserve the frequency value during clock tree configuration updates.

Table 12. Clock tree view widget



4.13.2 Recommendations

The **Clock tree** view is not the only entry for clock configuration.

1. Go first through the **RCC pinout configuration** in the **Pinout** view to enable the clocks as needed: external clocks, master output clocks and Audio I2S input clock when available (see *Figure 93*).

Figure 93. Clock tree configuration: enabling RTC, RCC Clock source and outputs from Pinout view

nout Clock Configuration Configuration Power Consumption	Calculator	
⊞ 0 1252		
<u>.</u>		
		3 월 3 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8
High Speed Clock (HSE) BYPASS Clock Source	-	
Low Speed Clock (LSE) Crystal/Ceramic Resonator		P64 // // // // // // // // // // // // //
Master Clock Output 1		PE6 [A12] VBA. [A11]
Master Clock Output 2		PC13 PA10 RCC_05C32,W PC1 PA9
Audio Clock Input (I2S, CKIN)	E	RCC_06C32_0U/T ICL 948 RCC 953 IS. 955
RNG		
		Pois Col
Activate Clock Source		PC1 P013
		CEIN STM32F429VITx COM LQFP100 COM
Alarm A Disable	-	VSSA VRE
Alarm B Disable		VED. 0315 PAQ. P814
WakeUp Disable	-	
Timestamp Routed to AF1		
Tamper 1 Routed to AF1		
	-	
Reference dock detection		



2. Then go to the **RCC configuration** in the **Configuration view**. The settings defined there for advanced configurations will be reflected in the **clock tree view**. The settings defined in the clock tree view may change the settings in the RCC configuration (see *Figure 94*).

🗆 Sy	stem Parameters		
	VDD voltage (V)	3.3 V	
	Instruction Cache	Enabled	
	Prefetch Buffer	Enabled	
	Data Cache	Enabled	
	Flash Latency(WS)	0 WS (1 CPU cycle)	
🗆 RC	C Parameters		
	HSI Calibration Value	6	
	TIM Prescaler Selection	Disabled	
🖃 Po	wer Parameters		
	Power Regulatror Voltage Scale	Power Regulator Voltage Scale 3	
	Power Over Drive	Disabled	

Figure 94. Clock tree configuration: RCC Peripheral Advanced parameters

4.13.3 STM32F43x/42x power-over drive feature

STM32F42x/43x MCUs implement a power over-drive feature allowing to work at the maximum AHB/APB bus frequencies (e.g., 180 MHz for HCLK) when a sufficient V_{DD} supply voltage is applied (e.g V_{DD} > 2.1 V).

Table 13 lists the different parameters linked to the power over-drive feature and their availability in STM32CubeMX user interface.



Parameter	STM32CubeMX panel	Value
V _{DD} voltage	Configuration (RCC)	User-defined within a predefined range. Impacts power over-drive.
Power Regulator Voltage scaling	Configuration (RCC)	Automatically derived from HCLK frequency and power over-drive (see <i>Table 14</i>).
Power Over Drive	Configuration (RCC)	This value is conditioned by HCLK and V _{DD} value (see <i>Table 14</i>). It can be enabled only if V _{DD} \geq 2.2 V When V _{DD} \geq 2.2 V, it is either automatically derived from HCLK or it can be configured by the user if multiple choices are possible (e.g., HCLK = 130 MHz)
HCLK/AHB clock maximum frequency value	Clock Configuration	Displayed in blue to indicate the maximum possible value. For example: maximum value is 168 MHz for HCLK when power over-drive cannot be activated (when $V_{DD} \le 2.1 \text{ V}$), otherwise it is 180 MHz.
APB1/APB2 clock maximum frequency value	Clock Configuration	Displayed in blue to indicate maximum possible value

Table 13, Voltage scalin	a versus power over-drive a	and HCLK frequency
Table To. Voltage Scallin	g versus power over-unver	and noticent nequency

Table 14 gives the relations between power-over drive mode and HCLK frequency.

•	· · ·						
HCLK frequency range: V _{DD} > 2.1 V required to enable power over- drive (POD)	Corresponding voltage scaling and power over-drive (POD)						
≤120 MHz	Scale 3 POD is disabled						
120 to 14 MHz	Scale 2 POD can be either disabled or enabled						
144 to 168 MHz	Scale 1 when POD is disabled Scale 2 when POD is enabled						
168 to 180 MHz	POD must be enabled Scale 1 (otherwise frequency range not supported)						

Table 14. Relations between power over-drive and HCLK frequency



4.13.4 Clock tree glossary

Acronym	Definition
HSI	High Speed Internal oscillator: enabled after reset, lower accuracy than HSE.
HSE	High Speed External oscillator: requires an external clock circuit.
PLL	Phase Locked Loop: used to multiply above clock sources.
LSI	Low Speed Internal clock: low power clocks usually used for watchdog timers.
LSE	Low Speed External clock: powered by an external clock.
SYSCLK	System clock
HCLK	Internal AHB clock frequency
FCLK	Cortex free running clock
AHB	Advanced High Performance Bus
APB1	Low speed Advanced Peripheral Bus
APB2	High speed Advanced Peripheral Bus

Table 15. Glossary

4.14 **Power Consumption Calculator view**

For an ever-growing number of embedded systems applications, power consumption is a major concern. To help minimizing it, STM32CubeMX offers the **Power Consumption Calculator** tab (see *Figure 95*), which, given a microcontroller, a battery model and a user-defined power sequence, provides the following results:

Average current consumption

Power consumption values can either be taken from the datasheet or interpolated from a user specified bus or core frequency.

- Battery life
- Average DMIPs

DMIPs values are directly taken from the MCU datasheet and are neither interpolated nor extrapolated.

• Maximum ambient temperature (T_{AMAX})

According to the chip internal power consumption, the package type and a maximum junction temperature of 105 °C, the tool computes the maximum ambient temperature to ensure good operating conditions.

Current T_{AMAX} implementation does not account for I/O consumption. For an accurate T_{AMAX} estimate, I/O consumption must be specified using the Additional Consumption field. The formula for I/O dynamic current consumption is specified in the microcontroller datasheet.



The **Power Consumption Calculator** view allows developers to visualize an estimate of the embedded application consumption and lower it further at each power sequence step:

- Make use of low power modes when any available
- Adjust clock sources and frequencies based on the step requirements.
- Enable the peripherals necessary for each phase.

For each step, the user can choose VBUS as possible power source instead of the battery. This will impact the battery life estimation. If power consumption measurements are available at different voltage levels, STM32CubeMX will also propose a choice of voltage values (see *Figure 99*).

An additional option, the transition checker, is available for STM32L0, STM32L1 and STM32L4 series. When it is enabled, the transition checker detects invalid transitions within the currently configured sequence. It ensures that only possible transitions are proposed to the user when a new step is added.

4.14.1 Building a power consumption sequence

The default starting view is shown in Figure 95.

STM32CubeMX Untitled: STM32L475VGTx
File Project Power Window Help
Pinout Clock Configuration Configuration Power Consumption Calculator DB Editor
Microcontroller Selected (8)
Series STM32L4 Line STM32L45 MCU STM32L475VGTx Datasheet 027692_Rev1
Parameter Selection
Ambient Temp 25 V Vdd Power SuChoose V
Battery Selection
Select Not set
In Series 1 A
In Parallel 1 🔂
Self Discharge 0.0 %/month
Nominal Voltage 0.0 V
Max Cont Curr0.0 mA
Max Pulse Cur 0.0 mA
Information Notes 🛞
Help

Figure 95. Power Consumption Calculator default view



Selecting a V_{DD} value

From this view and when multiple choices are available, the user must select a V_{DD} value.

Selecting a battery model (optional)

Optionally, the user can select a battery model. This can also be done once the power consumption sequence is configured.

The user can select a predefined battery or choose to specify a new battery that best matches his application (see *Figure 96*).

e Project Power Window	Hel	p @ 💌 🧈 🖣	+					
nout Clock Configuration C	Config	Austichte bewei	ation Colordator					
		Available batteri	es:					
Microcontroller Selecter		Battery Database Mar	nagement Add	Battery Remove L	Jser Battery E	Edit User Battery		
Serie:	STM							
MCU:	STM	Aud the Batteries (
Datasheet:	0258	Available Batteries Li	st					
	-	Name	Capacity (mAh)	Self Discharge (%	Nominal Voltage (\	 Max Cont Current 	. Max Pulse Curren	Database
Davamates Coloction		Alkaline(AA LR6)	2850.0	0.3	1.5	1000.0	0.0	Default
Parameter Selection		Alkaline(AAA LR03)	1250.0	0.3	1.5	400.0	0.0	Default
Ambient Temperatura (%C).	25	Alkaline (CLR 14)	8350.0	0.3	1.5	3000.0	0.0	Default
Ampient Temperature (C):	25	Alkaline(D LR 20)	20500.0	Addhaman		22	0.0	Default
Vdd Power Supply (V):	3.0	Alkaline(9V)	625.0	Add battery:	8.0		0.0	Default
	_	Li-MnO2(CR 1225)	48.0	Name	Battery 29		5.0	Default
		Li-MnO2(CR 1632)	125.0	- Carrie	buckery_25		10.0	Default
Battery Selection		Li-MnO2(CR2032)	225.0	Capacity (mAh)	0.0		15.0	Default
	_	Li-MnO2(CR2430)	285.0	- 10-11 10-11			20.0	Default
Select Battery		Li-MnO2(CR2477)	850.0	Self Discharge (%/mont	n) 0.0		10.0	Default
Detterry	_	Li-SOCL2(AAA700)	700.0	Nominal Voltage (V)	0.0		30.0	Default
battery:	AIN	Li-SOCL2(A3400)	3400.0	ronage (r)			200.0	Default
Capacity:	28	Li-SOCL2(C9000)	9000.0	Max Cont Current (mA)	0.0		400.0	Default
Self Discharge:	0.1	Li-SOCL2(D19000)	19000.0				500.0	Default
Nominal Voltage:	1.1	Li-SOCL2(DD36000)	36000.0	Max Pulse Current (mA)	0.0		1000.0	Default
Max Cont Current:	10	Ni-Cd(AA1100)	1100.0				0.0	Default
Max Dulas Currents	1	Ni-Cd(A1700)	1700.0	OK	Cancel		0.0	Default
Max Pulse Current:	0.0	Ni-Cd(C3000)	3000.0	LOID			0.0	Default
		Ni-Cd(D4400)	4400.0	20.0	1.2	880.0	0.0	Default
In Series: 1		Ni-Cd(F7000)	7000.0	20.0	1.2	1400.0	0.0	Default
		Ni-MH(AAA800)	800.0	30.0	1.2	160.0	0.0	Default
In Parallel: 1	-	Ni-MH(AA 1800)	1800.0	30.0	1.2	360.0	0.0	Default
	-	Ni-MH(A2500)	2500.0	30.0	1.2	500.0	0.0	Default
Information Notes							0	K Cancel
Help	C	۲						

Figure 96. Battery selection



Power sequence default view

The user can now proceed and build a power sequence (see Figure 97).

Figure 97. Building a power consul	nption sequence
------------------------------------	-----------------

File Project Power Window Help
📭 📭 🔁 🖶 🧶 💁 🤊 🔊 🕫 🔍 🎐
Pinout Clock Configuration Configuration Power Consumption Calculator
Series STM32L0 Line STM32L0x3 Sequence Table MCU STM32L053C Stm32L053C Datasheet 025844_Rev4
Parameter Selection Image: Constraint of the selection of the
Battery Selection Image: Selection of the sel
Hain

Managing sequence steps

Steps can be reorganized within a sequence (**Add** new, **Delete** a step, **Duplicate** a step, move **Up** or **Down** in the sequence) using the set of Step buttons (see *Figure 98*).

The user can undo or redo the last configuration actions by clicking the **Undo** button in the Power Consumption Calculator view or the Undo icon from the main toolbar

Figure 98. Step management functions

Step

Adding a step

There are two ways to add a new step:

- Click **Add** in the Power Consumption panel. The **New Step** window opens with empty step settings.
- Or, select a step from the sequence table and click **Duplicate**. A **New Step** window opens duplicating the step settings. (see *Figure 99*).

DocID025776 Rev 17



New Step					x
🍯 🗹 😣 🔪	-				
Power/Memory				Peripherals	-
Power Mode		RUN]	ADC	
Power Range		Choose	•	COMP1	
Memory Fetch Type			Ŧ	E Fast	
Vdd				Slow	
Voltage Source		Battery		CRC	
		battery	•		
Clocks				DAC	
CPU Frequency					
Interpolation Rang	ies				=
User Choice (Hz)	,			FLASH	
				GPIOA	
Clock Configuration				— — — GPIOB	
Clock Source Frequer	ncy		Ψ	GPIOC	
Optional Settings				GPIOH	
Opuonal Setungs			[12C1	
Step Duration		1	ms 👻	IWDG	
Additional Consumpti	on	0	mA 👻	LCD	
Bogulta				IPTIM1	
Chan Communities	00			LPUART1	
Step Consumption	υμΑ			PVD/BOR	
Without Peripherals	0 μA			RNG	
Peripherals Part	0 μA	(A: 0 μA - D: 0 μA)		RTC	
Ta Max (°C)	105			SPI1	
Warnings					
				Add	ncel

Figure 99. Power consumption sequence: new step default view



Once a step is configured, resulting current consumption and $T_{\mbox{\scriptsize AMAX}}$ values are provided in the window.

Editing a step

To edit a step, double-click it in the sequence table. The **Edit Step** window opens (see *Figure 100*).

Power/Memory —			Peripherals	*
Power Mode:	RUN	•	ADC	
Power Range:	Range 1-High	•	COMP1	
Memory Fetch Type:	FLASH	•	Fast	
Vdd:	3.0	•	Slow	
Voltage Source:	Battery	•		
	k	1		
Clocks			DBGMCU	
CPU Frequency:	32.0 MHz	-	DMA	
Interpolation range	s		FIREWALL	E
User choice (Hz):			FLASH	
Clock Configuration:	HSEBYP PLL	•	GPIOB	
Clock Source Frequenc	16.0 MHz		GPIOC	
clock source mequeix	10.01112	•	GPIOH	
Optional Settings			I I2C1 □ I2C2	
Step Duration:	1	ms 👻	IWDG	
Additional Consumptio	n: 0	mA 🔻		
Results				
Step Consumption:	6.65 mA		PWR	
Without Peripherals:	6.3 mA			
Peripherals Part:	352 µА (А: 0 µА - D: 352 µА)		RTC	
Ta Max (°C):	103.9		SPI1	
			SYSCEG	-
Peripherals Part: Ta Max (°C): Warnings	352 µА (А: 0 µА - D: 352 µА) 103.9		SPI1 SPI2 SYSCEG	Cancel





Moving a step

By default, a new step is added at the end of a sequence.

Click the step in the sequence table to select it and use the **Up** and **Down** buttons to move it elsewhere in the sequence.

Deleting a step

Select the step to be deleted and click the **Delete** button.

Using the transition checker

Not all transitions between power modes are possible. The Power Consumption Calculator proposes a transition checker to detect invalid transitions or restrict the sequence configuration to only valid transitions.

Enabling the transition checker option prior to sequence configuration ensures the user will be able to select only valid transition steps.

Enabling the transition checker option on an already configured sequence will highlight the sequence in green (green frame) if all transitions are valid (see *Figure 101*), or in red if at least one transition is invalid (red frame with description of invalid step highlighted in red) (see *Figure 102*).

In this case, the user can click the **Show log** button to find out how to solve the transition issue (see *Figure 103*).

Figure 101. Enabling the transition checker option on an already configured sequence - all transitions valid

Step -								Sequence						Transitio	ons Check	œr
+)			X			2	🔽 On	Log	
Sequer	nce Table ·															_
Step	Mode	Vdd	Ran	Mem	CPU	Cloc	Src	Peri	Add	Step	Dur	DMIPS	Volt	Та	Cat	
1	RUN	3.0	Rang	FLASH	1000	MSI	1.0 MHz	ĺ	0 mA	166.9	1 ms	0.95	Battery	104.97	Inter	1
2	RUN	3.0	Rang	FLASH	8.0 MHz	HSEBYP	8.0 MHz		0 mA	1.3 mA	1 ms	7.6	Battery	104.79	Datas	In I
3	RUN	3.0	Rang	FLASH	8.0 MHz	HSEBYP	8.0 MHz	ADC	0 mA	3.51 mA	1 ms	7.6	Battery	104.42	Datas	
4	SLEEP	3.0	Rang	FLASH	8.0 MHz	HSEBYP	8.0 MHz		0 mA	380 µA	1 ms	7.6	Battery	104.94	Datas	E
5	RUN	3.0	Rang	FLASH	4.2 MHz	MSI	4.2 MHz	ADC	0 mA	1.64 mA	1 ms	3.99	Battery	104.73	Datas	
6	RUN	3.0	Rang	FLASH	1200	HSEBYP	12.0		0 mA	2.33 mA	1 ms	11.4	Battery	104.62	Inter	
7	STOP	3.0	NoRa	n/a	0 Hz	ALL C	0 Hz		0 mA	0.41 µA	1 ms	0.0	Battery	105	Datas	1.



Figure 102. Enabling the transition checker option on an already configured sequence - at least one transition invalid

 Step — 							Se	quence –					[Tr	ansitions	Checker
+					_ ``	(1		<u></u>		×		<u>b</u>	2	7 On	Log
Sequer	ice Table -														
Step	Mode	Vdd	Ran	Mem	CPU	Cloc	Src	Peri	Add	Step	Dura	DMIPS	Volt	Ta Max	Cat
1	RUN	3.0	Rang	FLASH	10000	MSI	1.0 MHz		0 mA	166.9	1 ms	0.95	Battery	104.97	Inter
2	RUN	3.0	Rang	FLASH	8.0 MHz	HSEBYP	8.0 MHz		0 mA	1.3 mA	1 ms	7.6	Battery	104.79	Datas
3	RUN	3.0	Rang	FLASH	8.0 MHz	HSEBYP	8.0 MHz	ADC	0 mA	3.51 mA	1 ms	7.6	Battery	104.42	Datas
4	SLEEP	3.0	Rang	FLASH	8.0 MHz	HSEBYP	8.0 MHz		0 mA	380 µA	1 ms	7.6	Battery	104.94	Datas
5	RUN	3.0	Rang	FLASH	4.2 MHz	MSI	4.2 MHz	ADC	0 mA	1.64 mA	1 ms	3.99	Battery	104.73	Datas
6	RUN	3.0	Rang	FLASH	12000	HSEBYP	12.0		0 mA	2.33 mA	1 ms	11.4	Battery	104.62	Inter
7	STOP	3.0	NoRa	n/a	0 Hz	ALL C	0 Hz		0 mA	0.41 µA	1 ms	0.0	Battery	105	Datas
8	SLEEP	3.0	Rang	FLASH	80000	HSEBYP	8.0 MHz		0 mA	380 µA	1 ms	7.6	Battery	104.94	Inter

Figure 103. Transition checker option -show log

Possible next step(tween step 4 (SLEEP, Range2-Medium) and step 5 (RI s): RUN [Range1-High, Range2-Medium, Range3-Low] ===== Transition allowed !	UN, Range1-High) ^]
Check transition be Possible next step(Possible next step(Possible next step(Possible next step(Possible next step(tween step 5 (RUN, Range1-High) and step 6 (STOP, N s): RUN [Range1-High, Range2-Medium, Range3-Low s): LOWPOWER_RUN [NoRange] s): SLEEP [Range1-High, Range2-Medium, Range3-Lo s): LOWPOWER_SLEEP [NoRange] s): STOP [NoRange] ====== Transition allowed !	NoRange)] ow]
Check transition be Possible next step(tween step 6 (STOP, NoRange) and step 7 (SLEEP, R s): WU_FROM_STOP [NoRange]	ange1-High)

UM1718



4.14.2 Configuring a step in the power sequence

The step configuration is performed from the **Edit Step** and **New Step** windows. The graphical interface guides the user by forcing a predefined order for setting parameters.

Their naming may differ according to the selected MCU series. For details on each parameter, refer to Section 4.14.4: Power sequence step parameters glossary glossary and to Appendix D: STM32 microcontrollers power consumption parameters or to the electrical characteristics section of the MCU datasheet.

The parameters are set automatically by the tool when there is only one possible value (in this case, the parameter cannot be modified and is grayed out). The tool proposes only the configuration choices relevant to the selected MCU.

Proceed as follow to configure a new step:

- 1. Click **Add** or **Duplicate** to open the **New step** window or double-click a step from the sequence table to open the **Edit step** window.
- 2. Within the open step window, select in the following order:
 - The Power Mode

Changing the Power Mode resets the whole step configuration.

- The Peripherals

Peripherals can be selected/unselected at any time after the Power Mode is configured.

The Power scale

The power scale corresponds to the power consumption range (STM32L1) or the power scale (STM32F4).

Changing the Power Mode or the Power Consumption Range discards all subsequent configurations.

- The Memory Fetch Type
- The V_{DD} value if multiple choices available
- The voltage source (battery or VBUS)
- A Clock Configuration
 Changing the Clock Configuration resets the frequency choices further down.
 - When multiple choices are available, the CPU Frequency (STM32F4) and the AHB Bus Frequency/CPU Frequency(STM32L1) or, for active modes, a user specified frequency. In this case, the consumption value will be interpolated (see Section : Using interpolation).
- 3. Optionally set
 - A step duration (1 ms is the default value)
 - An additional consumption value (expressed in mA) to reflect, for example, external components used by the application (external regulator, external pull-up, LEDs or other displays). This value added to the microcontroller power consumption will impact the step overall power consumption.
- 4. Once the configuration is complete, the **Add** button becomes active. Click it to create the step and add it to the sequence table.



Using interpolation

For steps configured for active modes (Run, Sleep), frequency interpolation is supported by selecting CPU frequency as User Defined and entering a frequency in Hz (see *Figure 104*).

	P	Daviahavala	
		reripiierais	^
	-	ADC	
-High	- ,		
	-	Fast	
	-	Slow	
	-		
		DAC	
fined		DMA	=
z 16.0 MHz	-		_
0		FLASH	
	•		
2	•		
		— 🔲 GPIOH	
		I2C1	
ms	-		
mA	-		
		DUART1	
		PVD/BOR	
		PWR	
- D: 0 μA)			
		SPI1	
		SPT2	T
	-Hign -fined z 16.0 MHz 0 z ms mA - D: 0 μA)	-Hign	High v High v High v High v High v

Figure 104. Interpolated Power Consumption



Importing pinout

Figure 105 illustrates the example of the ADC configuration in the **Pinout** view: clicking **Import Pinout** in the Power Consumption Calculator view selects the ADC peripheral and GPIO A (*Figure 106*).

The **Import pinout** button **2** allows to automatically select the peripherals that have been configured in the **Pinout** view.

Figure 105. ADC selected in Pinout view





Selecting/deselecting all peripherals

Clicking the **Select All** button *all* allows selecting all peripherals at once.

Clicking **Deselect All** 👩 removes them as contributors to the step consumption.

Figure 106. Power Consumption Calculator Step configuration window: ADC enabled using import pinout

New Step				×
)			
Power/Memory	DUN		Peripherals	Â
Power Mode:	RUN	-	ADC1	
Power Scale:	Scale 1-High	•	ADC3	
Memory Fetch Type:	FLASH	•	BKPSRAM	
Vdd:	3.3	•	BusMatrix	
Voltage Source:	Battery	•	CAN1	E
Clocks			DAC	
CPU Frequency:	168.0 MHz	•	🔲 OUT1	
Interpolation ranges		-	OUT1+OUT2	
User choice (Hz):				
Clock Configuration:	HSE PLL	•	DCMI DMA1	
Clock Source Frequence	4.0 MHz	•	DMA2	
	L		m DMA2D	
Optional Settings			ETH	
Step Duration:	1 m	s 👻		
Additional Consumption	: 0 m	A 👻	GPIOB	
			GPIOC	
-Results			GPIOD	
Step Consumption:	52.41 mA		GPIOE	
Without Peripherals:	50 mA			
Peripherals Part:	2.41 mA (A: 1.6 mA - D: 812.28 µA)		I2C2	
Ta Max (°C):	97.56		I2C3	
Warnings			I252	*
			Add Ca	incel

4.14.3 Managing user-defined power sequence and reviewing results

The configuration of a power sequence leads to an update of the Power Consumption Calculator view (see *Figure 107*):

- The sequence table shows all steps and step parameters values. A category column indicates whether the consumption values are taken from the datasheet or are interpolated.
- The sequence chart area shows different views of the power sequence according to a display type (e.g. plot all steps, plot low power versus run modes, ..)
- The results summary provides the total sequence time, the maximum ambient temperature (T_{AMAX}), plus an estimate of the average power consumption, DMIPS, and battery lifetime provided a valid battery configuration has been selected.

File Project Power Window Help																	x
)																_
- 🖪 🛤 🔲 🔜 🐴 💽	0.0	a i 🛛 🕡 i 🖬	L														
	-	Power Consumption	Calculat	tor													
Pinout Clock Conliguration Conligur	auon	-Sten	r carcala						equence						-Transiti	ons Char	kor.
Microcontroller Selec 🛞	Â,					L K) (×			2	I ansid ⊘ On	Log	
Series STM32L0		Sequence Table		DI										_			_
Line STM32L0x3 MCU STM32L053C		Step Mode	Vdd	Rahm	ase sele	t the step	to mov	e up first	eri	Add	Step	Dur	DMIPS	Volt	Та	Cat	
Datasheet 025844_Rev4		1 RUN	3.0	Rang	FLASH	1000	MSI	1.0 MHz		0 mA	166.9	1 ms	0.95	Battery	104.97	Inter	-
		2 RUN	3.0	Rang	FLASH	8.0 MHz	HSEBYP	8.0 MHz	ADC	0 mA	1.3 mA	1 ms	7.6	Battery	104.79	Datas	-
Parameter Selection		4 SLEEP	3.0	Rang	FLASH	8.0 MHz	HSEBYP	8.0 MHz	AUC	0 mA	380 µA	1 ms	7.6	Battery	104.94	Datas	1
		5 RUN	3.0	Rang	FLASH	4.2 MHz	MSI	4.2 MHz	ADC	0 mA	1.64 mA	1 ms	3.99	Battery	104.73	Datas	
Ambient Tem 25 🗸		6 RUN	3.0	Rang	FLASH	1200	HSEBYP	12.0		0 mA	2.33 mA	1 ms	11.4	Battery	104.62	Inter	
Vdd Power S 3.0 👻		7 STOP	3.0	NoRa	n/a	0 Hz	ALL C	0 Hz		0 mA	0.41 µA	1 ms	0.0	Battery	105	Datas	
Battery Selection	Ξ	Plot: All Steps Plot: Run / Low	Power		~	С	onsu	nption	ı Profi	le by	Step						
Select		Area %: Run / L	ow Powe	er									6:R	JN			
Battery Alkaline(AA L		Pie: All Modes	ower	Ε			3:RU	N			5-RI	N	ţ				
In Series 2		IP Consumption	: All		2:RL	IN					0.100						
In Parallel 3 🌲		IP Consumption	: Analog		Ļ												
Capacity 8550.0 mAh		IP Consumption	: Digital	-					4:SL	EP					7.0		
Self Discharge 0.3 %/month		SC 1.0	1						÷						1.5	IOP	
Nominal Volt 3.0 V		8 0.5 0.0		_											+		
Max Cont Cu3000.0 mA		0.0	0.5	1.0	1.5	2.0	2.5	3.0	3.5	4.0	4.5	5.0	5.5	6.0	6.5	7.0	
Max Pulse C 0.0 mA									Time (i	ms)							
						•	Idd b	y Step -	Aver	age Cur	rent						
Information Notes	-	Sequence Time Battery Life Est	e / Ta Ma imation	ax 7 ms 8 mo	6 / 104.4 () onths, 20	2 °C) days, 9	hours						Average Average	Consur DMIPS	mption	1.33 m/ 6.52 DM	A MP S

Figure 107. Power Consumption Calculator view after sequence building



The current sequence can be saved or deleted by clicking respectively.

and	X	,

E -

In addition, a previously saved sequence can be either loaded in the current view or opened for comparison by clicking (see *Figure 108*).

Figure 108. Sequence table management functions



To load a previously saved sequence:

- 1. Click the load button
- 2. Browse to select the sequence to load.
- To open a previously saved sequence for comparison:
- 1. Click the **Compare** button **.**.
- 2. Browse and select the .pcs sequence file to be compared with the current sequence. A new window opens showing the selected sequence details.



Managing the results charts and display options

In the Display area, select the type of chart to display (sequence steps, pie charts, consumption per peripherals, ...). You can also click **External Display** to open the charts in dedicated windows (see *Figure 109*).

Right-click on the chart to access the contextual menus: **Properties**, **Copy**, **Save** as png picture file, **Print**, **Zoom** menus, and **Auto Range** to reset to the original view before zoom operations. **Zooming** can also be achieved by mouse selecting from left to right a zone in the chart and **Zoom reset** by clicking the chart and dragging the mouse to the left.



Figure 109. Power Consumption: Peripherals Consumption Chart



This area provides the following information (see *Figure 110*):

- Total sequence time as the sum of the sequence steps durations.
- Average consumption as the sum of each step consumption weighed by the step duration.
- The average DMIPS (Dhrystone Million Instructions per Second) based on Dhrystone benchmark, highlighting the CPU performance for the defined sequence.
- Battery life estimation for the selected battery model, based on the average power consumption and the battery self-discharge.
- T_{AMAX}: highest maximum ambient temperature value encountered during the sequence.

Figure 110. Description of the Results area

Results Summary			
Sequence Time / Ta Max	7 ms / 104.42 °C	Average Consumption	1.33 mA
Battery Life Estimation	8 months , 20 days & 9 hours	Average DMIPS	6.52 DMIPS

4.14.4 Power sequence step parameters glossary

The parameters that characterize power sequence steps are the following (refer to *Appendix D: STM32 microcontrollers power consumption parameters* for more details):

Power modes

To save energy, it is recommended to switch the microcontroller operating mode from running mode, where a maximum power is required, to a low-power mode requiring limited resources.

- V_{CORE} range (STM32L1) or Power scale (STM32F4)
 These parameters are set by software to control the power supply range for digital peripherals.
- Memory Fetch Type

This field proposes the possible memory locations for application C code execution. It can be either RAM, FLASH or FLASH with ART ON or OFF (only for families that feature a proprietary Adaptive real-time (ART) memory accelerator which increases the program execution speed when executing from Flash memory).



The performance achieved thanks to the ART accelerator is equivalent to 0 wait state program execution from Flash memory. In terms of power consumption, it is equivalent to program execution from RAM. In addition, STM32CubeMX uses the same selection choice to cover both settings, RAM and Flash with ART ON.

Clock Configuration

This operation sets the AHB bus frequency or the CPU frequency that will be used for computing the microcontroller power consumption. When there is only one possible choice, the frequencies are automatically configured.

The clock configuration drop-down list allows to configure the application clocks:

- The internal or external oscillator sources: MSI, HSI, LSI, HSE or LSE),
- The oscillator frequency,
- Other determining parameters: PLL ON, LSE Bypass, AHB prescaler value, LCD with duty...
- Peripherals

The peripheral list shows the peripherals available for the selected power mode. The power consumption is given assuming that peripherals are only clocked (e.g. not in use by a running program). Each peripheral can be enabled or disabled. Peripherals individual power consumptions are displayed in a tooltip. An overall consumption due to peripheral analog and digital parts is provided in the step Results area (see *Figure 111*).

The user can select the peripherals relevant for the application:

- None (Disable All),
- Some (using peripheral dedicated checkbox),
- All (Activate All),
- Or all from the previously defined pinout configuration (Import Pinout).

Only the selected and enabled peripherals are taken into account when computing the power consumption.



Power/Memory		Peripherals
Power Mode	RUN	ADC
Power Range	Range 1-High	
Manany Eatob Type		COMP2
Memory Petch Type		T Fast
Vdd	3.0	
Voltage Source	Battery	
de de		
CIOCKS		
CPU Frequency	32.0 MHz	
Interpolation Rang	jes	▼ FIREWALL
User Choice (Hz)		V FLASH
Clock Configuration	HSEBYP PLL	
Clock Source Freque	ncy 16.0 MHz	▼ GPIOC
	N	GPIOH
Optional Settings —		V I2C1
Optional Settings Step Duration	1 ms	▼
Optional Settings Step Duration Additional Consumpti	ion 0 mA	▼
Optional Settings — Step Duration Additional Consumpti	ion 0 mA	▼
Optional Settings — Step Duration Additional Consumpti Results —	1 ms -	▼ 12C1 ▼ 12C2 ■ ✓ 12C2 ■ ✓ 1WDG ■ ✓ LCD ■ ✓ LPTIM1 ■ ✓ LPUART1
Optional Settings — Step Duration Additional Consumpti Results — Step Consumption	ion 0 mA -	
Optional Settings — Step Duration Additional Consumpti Results — Step Consumption Without Peripherals	ion 0 mA -	
Optional Settings — Step Duration Additional Consumpti Results — Step Consumption Without Peripherals Peripherals Part	1 ms ion 0 mA 12.48 mA 6.3 mA 6.18 mA (A: 547.09 μA - D: 5.63 mA)	
Optional Settings — Step Duration Additional Consumpti Results — Step Consumption Without Peripherals Peripherals Part Ta Max (°C)	ion 0 mA 12.48 mA 6.3 mA 6.18 mA (A: 547.09 μA - D: 5.63 mA) 102.94	

Figure 111. Peripheral power consumption tooltip

• Step duration

The user can change the default step duration value. When building a sequence, the user can either create steps according to the application actual power sequence or define them as a percentage spent in each mode. For example, if an application spends 30% in Run mode, 20% in Sleep and 50% in Stop, the user must configure a 3-step sequence consisting in 30 ms in Run, 20 ms in Sleep and 50 ms in Stop.

Additional Consumption

This field allows entering an additional consumption resulting from specific user configuration (e.g. MCU providing power supply to other connected devices).


4.14.5 Battery glossary

- Capacity (mAh) Amount of energy that can be delivered in a single battery discharge.
- Self-discharge (%/month) This percentage, over a specified period, represents the loss of battery capacity when the battery is not used (open-circuit conditions), as a result of internal leakage.
- Nominal voltage (V)
 Voltage supplied by a fully charged battery.
- Max. Continuous Current (mA)

This current corresponds to the maximum current that can be delivered during the battery lifetime period without damaging the battery.

Max. Pulse Current (mA)
 This is the maximum pulse current that can be delivered exceptionally, for instance when the application is switched on during the starting phase.



5 STM32CubeMX C Code generation overview

Refer to Section 4.4.2: Project menu for code generation and C project settings related topics.

5.1 STM32Cube code generation using only HAL drivers (default mode)

During the C code generation process, STM32CubeMX performs the following actions:

- If it is missing, it downloads the relevant STM32Cube firmware package from the user repository. STM32CubeMX repository folder is specified in the Help > Updater settings menu.
- 2. It copies from the firmware package, the relevant files in *Drivers/CMSIS* and *Drivers/STM32F4_HAL_Driver* folders and in the *Middleware* folder if a middleware was selected.
- 3. It generates the initialization C code (.c/.h files) corresponding to the user MCU configuration and stores it in the *Inc* and *Src* folders. By default, the following files are included:
 - stm32f4xx_hal_conf.h file: this file defines the enabled HAL modules and sets some parameters (e.g. External High Speed oscillator frequency) to predefined default values or according to user configuration (clock tree).
 - stm32f4xx_hal_msp.c (MSP = MCU Support package): this file defines all initialization functions to configure the peripheral instances according to the user configuration (pin allocation, enabling of clock, use of DMA and Interrupts).
 - **main.c** is in charge of:

Resetting the MCU to a known state by calling the *HAL_init()* function that resets all peripherals, initializes the Flash memory interface and the SysTick.

Configuring and initializing the system clock.

Configuring and initializing the GPIOs that are not used by peripherals.

Defining and calling, for each configured peripheral, a peripheral initialization function that defines a handle structure that will be passed to the corresponding peripheral *HAL init* function which in turn will call the peripheral HAL MSP initialization function. Note that when LwIP (respectively USB) middleware is used, the initialization C code for the underlying Ethernet (respectively USB peripheral) is moved from main.c to LwIP (respectively USB) initialization C code itself.

- main.h file:

This file contains the define statements corresponding to the pin labels set from the **Pinout** tab, as well as the user project constants added from the **Configuration** tab (refer to *Figure 112* and *Figure 113* for examples):

```
#define MyTimeOut 10
#define LD4_Pin GPIO_PIN_12
#define LD4_GPIO_Port GPIOD
#define LD3_Pin GPIO_PIN_13
#define LD3_GPIO_Port GPIOD
#define LD5_Pin GPIO_PIN_14
```

#define LD5_GPIO_Port GPIOD
#define LD6_Pin GPIO_PIN_15
#define LD6_GPIO_Port GPIOD



Figure 112. Labels for pins generating define statements



Parameter Settings User Constant	ants 🔣 NVIC Settings 🗹 GPIO Settings
Search Constants Search (Crtl+F)	add remove
Constant Name	Constant Value
	10

In case of duplicate labels, a unique suffix, consisting of the pin port letter and the pin index number, is added and used for the generation of the associated define statements.

In the example of a duplicate I2C1 labels shown in *Figure 114*, the code generation produces the following code, keeping the I2C1 label on the original port B pin 6 define statements and adding B7 suffix on pin 7 define statements:

#define	I2C1_Pin	GPIO_PIN_6
#define	I2C1_GPI0_Port	GPIOB
#define	I2C1 B7_ Pin	GPIO_PIN_7
#define	I2C1 B7_ GPI0_Port	GPIOB

Figure 114. Duplicate labels





In order for the generated project to compile, define statements shall follow strict naming conventions. They shall start with a letter or an underscore as well as the corresponding label. In addition, they shall not include any special character such as minus sign, parenthesis or brackets. Any special character within the label will be automatically replaced by an underscore in the define name.

If the label contains character strings between "[]" or "()", only the first string listed is used for the define name. As an example, the label "**LD6** [Blue Led]" corresponds the following define statements:

#define LD6_Pin GPIO_PIN_15

#define LD6_GPI0_Port GPI0D

The define statements are used to configure the GPIOs in the generated initialization code. In the following example, the initialization of the pins labeled *Audio RST Pin* and *LD4 Pin* is done using the corresponding define statements:

```
/*Configure GPIO pins : LD4_Pin Audio_RST_Pin */
GPIO_InitStruct.Pin = LD4_Pin | Audio_RST_Pin;
GPIO_InitStruct.Mode = GPIO_MODE_OUTPUT_PP;
GPIO_InitStruct.Pull = GPIO_NOPULL;
GPIO_InitStruct.Speed = GPIO_SPEED_LOW;
HAL_GPIO_Init(GPIOD, &GPIO_InitStruct);
```

4. Finally it generates a *Projects* folder that contains the toolchain specific files that match the user project settings. Double-clicking the IDE specific project file launches the IDE and loads the project ready to be edited, built and debugged.

5.2 STM32Cube code generation using Low Layer drivers

Starting from STM32CubeMX 4.17 and STM32L4 series, STM32CubeMX allows generating peripheral initialization code based either on the peripheral HAL driver or on the peripheral Low Layer (LL) driver.

The choice is made through the Project Settings window (see *Section 4.8.3: Advanced Settings tab*).

The LL drivers are available only for the peripherals which require an optimized access and do not have a complex software configuration. The LL services allow performing atomic operations by changing the relevant peripheral registers content:

- Examples of supported peripherals: RCC, ADC, GPIO, I2C, SPI, TIM, USART,...
- Examples of peripherals not supported by LL drivers: USB, SDMMC, FSMC.

The LL drivers are available within the STM32CubeL4 package:

- They are located next to the HAL drivers (**stm32l4_hal_<peripheral_name>**) within the *Inc* and *Src* directory of the *STM32Cube_FW_L4_V1.6\Drivers\STM32L4xx_HAL_Driver* folder.
- They can be easily recognizable by their naming convention: stm32l4_II_<peripheral_name>

For more details on HAL and LL drivers refer to the *STM32L4 HAL and Low-layer drivers* user manual (UM1884).

As the decision to use LL or HAL drivers is made on a peripheral basis, the user can mix both HAL and LL drivers within the same project.

DocID025776 Rev 17



The following tables shows the main differences between the three possible STM32CubeMX project generation options: HAL-only, LL-only, and mix of HAL and LL code.

Table	16. LL	versus HAL	code a	eneration:	drivers	included in	STM32CubeMX	oro (iects
TUDIC		101303 HAL	oode g	chichadion	an 10010	monuaca m			jeeto

Project configuration and drivers to be included	HAL only	LL only	Mix of HAL and LL	Comments
CMSIS	Yes	Yes	Yes	-
STM32xxx_HAL_Driver	Only HAL driver files	Only LL driver files	Mix of HAL and LL driver files	Only the driver files required for a given configuration (selection of peripherals) are copied when the project settings option is set to "Copy only the necessary files". Otherwise ("all used libraries" option) the complete set of driver files is copied.

Table 17. LL versus HAL code generation: STM32CubeMX generated header files

Generated header files	HAL only	LL only	Mix of HAL and LL	Comments
main.h	Yes	Yes	Yes	This file contains the include statements and the generated define statements for user constants (GPIO labels and user constants).
stm32xxx_hal_conf.h	Yes	No	Yes	This file enables the HAL modules necessary to the project.
stm32xxx_it.h	Yes	Yes	Yes	Header file for interrupt handlers
stm32xx_assert.h	No	Yes	Yes	This file contains the assert macros and the functions used for checking function parameters.



Generated source files	HAL only	LL only	Mix of HAL and LL	Comments
main.c	Yes	Yes	Yes	This file contains the main functions and optionally STM32CubeMX generated functions.
stm32xxx_hal_msp.c	Yes	No	Yes	This file contains the following functions: – HAL_MspInit – for peripherals using HAL drivers: HAL_ <peripheral>_MspInit, HAL_<peripheral>_MspDeInit, These functions are available only for the peripherals that use HAL drivers.</peripheral></peripheral>
stm32xxx_it.c	Yes	Yes	Yes	Source file for interrupt handlers

Table 18. LL versus HAL: STM32CubeMX generated source files

Table 19. LL versus HAL: STM32CubeMX	generated functions and function calls
--------------------------------------	--

Generated source files	HAL only	LL only	Mix of HAL and LL	Comments
Hal_init()	Called in main.c	Not used	Called in main.c	 This file performs the following functions: Configuration of the Flash prefetch and instruction and data caches Selection of the SysTick timer as timebase source Setting of NVIC Group Priority MCU low-level MCU initialization.
Hal_msp_init()	Generated in stm32xxx_hal_msp.c and called by HAL_init()	Not used	Generated in stm32xxx_hal_msp.c And called by HAL_init()	This function performs the peripheral resource configuration ⁽¹⁾ .
LL_init()	Not used	Generated and called in main.c	Not used	System and memory interrupt configuration
MX_ <peripheral>_Init()</peripheral>	[1] Peripheral configuration and call to HAL_ <peripheral>_Init()</peripheral>	[2] Peripheral and peripheral resource configuration ⁽¹⁾ using LL functions. Call to LL_Peripheral_Init()	 When HAL driver is selected for the <peripheral>, function generation and calls are done following [1]</peripheral> When LL driver selected for the <peripheral>, function generation and calls are done following [2]</peripheral> 	This file takes care of the peripheral configuration. When the LL driver is selected for the <peripheral>, it also performs the peripheral resource configuration⁽¹⁾.</peripheral>



Table 19. LL versus HAL: STM32CubeMX generated functions and function calls (continued)

Generated source files	HAL only	LL only	Mix of HAL and LL	Comments
HAL_ <peripheral>_Msp Init()</peripheral>	[3] Generated in stm32xxx_hal_msp.c when HAL driver selected for the <peripheral></peripheral>	Not used	Only HAL driver can be selected for the <peripheral>: function generation and calls are done following [3]</peripheral>	Peripheral resource configuration ⁽¹⁾
HAL_ <peripheral>_Msp DeInit()</peripheral>	[4] Generated in stm32xxx_hal_msp.c when HAL driver selected for the <peripheral></peripheral>	Not used	Only HAL driver can be selected for the <peripheral>: function generation and calls are done following [4]</peripheral>	This function can be used to free peripheral resources.

1.

Peripheral resources include: Peripheral clock Pinout configuration (GPIO) Peripheral DMA requests Peripheral Interrupt requests and priorities



```
Figure 115. HAL-based peripheral initialization: usart.c code snippet
```

```
USART Peripheral initialization - HAL-based
void MX_USART1_UART_Init(void)
{
                                             Peripheral Configuration
  huart1.Instance = USART1;
  huart1.Init.BaudRate = 115200;
  huart1.Init.WordLength = UART_WORDLENGTH_7B;
 huart1.Init.StopBits = UART STOPBITS 1;
  . . .
 if (HAL_UART_Init(shuart1) != HAL_OK)
  {
    Error_Handler();
  }
}
void HAL_UART_MspInit(UART_HandleTypeDef* uartHandle)
{
                                       Peripheral Resources Configuration
  GPI0_InitTypeDef GPI0_InitStruct;
  if (uartHandle->Instance==USART1)
  {
    /* Peripheral clock enable */
     _HAL_RCC_USART1_CLK_ENABLE();
    /* USART1 GPIO Configuration */
   GPIO_InitStruct.Pin = GPIO_PIN_10;
   GPIO_InitStruct.Mode = GPIO_MODE_AF_PP;
    GPIO_InitStruct.Pull = GPIO_PULLUP;
    . . .
    HAL GPIO Init(GPIOB, &GPIO InitStruct);
  }
3
void HAL_UART_MspDeInit(UART_HandleTypeDef* uartHandle)
{
                                        Peripheral Resources Release
  if (uartHandle->Instance==USART1)
  {
      /* Peripheral clock disable */
     _HAL_RCC_USART1_CLK_DISABLE();
    /* USART1 GPIO Configuration */
    HAL_GPIO_DeInit(GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_10);
    HAL_GPIO_DeInit(GPIOB, GPIO_PIN_6);
  }
```



```
Figure 116. LL-based peripheral initialization: usart.c code snippet
USART Peripheral Initialization using LL drivers
void MX_USART1_UART_Init(void)
{
  LL USART InitTypeDef USART InitStruct;
  LL_GPI0_InitTypeDef GPI0_InitStruct;
  /* Peripheral clock enable */
  LL_APB2_GRP1_EnableClock(LL_APB2_GRP1_PERIPH_USART1);
                                     Peripheral Resources Configuration
    /**USART1 GPIO Configuration
   PA10 ----> USART1 RX
            ----> USART1 TX
   PB6
    */
  GPIO InitStruct.Pin = LL GPIO PIN 10;
  GPIO_InitStruct.Mode = LL_GPIO_MODE_ALTERNATE;
  GPIO InitStruct.Speed = LL GPIO SPEED FREQ VERY HIGH;
  GPIO_InitStruct.Pull = LL_GPIO_PULL_UP;
  GPIO_InitStruct.Alternate = LL_GPIO_AF_7;
  LL GPIO Init (GPIOA, &GPIO InitStruct);
  GPIO_InitStruct.Pin = LL_GPIO_PIN_6;
  GPI0_InitStruct.Mode = LL_GPI0_MODE_ALTERNATE;
  GPIO_InitStruct.Speed = LL_GPIO_SPEED_FREQ_VERY_HIGH;
  GPIO_InitStruct.Pull = LL_GPIO_PULL_UP;
  GPIO InitStruct.Alternate = LL GPIO AF 7;
  LL_GPIO_Init(GPIOB, &GPIO_InitStruct);
                                            Peripheral Configuration
  USART_InitStruct.BaudRate = 115200;
  USART_InitStruct.DataWidth = LL_USART_DATAWIDTH_7B;
  USART InitStruct.StopBits = LL USART STOPBITS 1;
  USART_InitStruct.Parity = LL_USART_PARITY_NONE;
  USART_InitStruct.TransferDirection = LL_USART_DIRECTION_TX_RX;
  USART_InitStruct.HardwareFlowControl = LL_USART_HWCONTROL_NONE;
  USART_InitStruct.OverSampling = LL_USART_OVERSAMPLING_16;
  LL_USART_Init(USART1, &USART_InitStruct);
  LL USART ConfigAsyncMode (USART1);
```







5.3 Custom code generation

STM32CubeMX supports custom code generation by means of a FreeMarker template engine (see http://www.freemarker.org).

5.3.1 STM32CubeMX data model for FreeMarker user templates

STM32CubeMX can generate a custom code based on a FreeMarker template file (.ftl extension) for any of the following MCU configuration information:

- List of MCU peripherals used by the user configuration
- List of parameters values for those peripherals
- List of resources used by these peripherals: GPIO, DMA requests and interrupts.

The user template file must be compatible with STM32CubeMX data model. This means that the template must start with the following lines:

```
[#ft1]
[#list configs as dt]
[#assign data = dt]
[#assign peripheralParams =dt.peripheralParams]
[#assign peripheralGPIOParams =dt.peripheralGPIOParams]
[#assign usedIPs =dt.usedIPs]
```

and end with

[/#list]

A sample template file is provided for guidance (see *Figure 118: extra_templates folder – default content*).

STM32CubeMX will also generate user-specific code if any is available within the template.

As shown in the below example, when the sample template is used, the ftl commands are provided as comments next to the data they have generated:

FreeMarker command in template:

```
${peripheralParams.get("RCC").get("LSI_VALUE")}
Resulting generated code:
LSI_VALUE : 32000 [peripheralParams.get("RCC").get("LSI_VALUE")]
```

5.3.2 Saving and selecting user templates

The user can either place the FreeMarker template files under STM32CubeMX installation path within the db/extra_templates folder or in any other folder.

Then for a given project, the user will select the template files relevant for his project via the **Template Settings** window accessible from the **Project Settings** menu (see Section 4.8: Project Settings window)



5.3.3 Custom code generation

To generate custom code, the user must place the FreeMarker template file under STM32CubeMX installation path within the db/extra_templates folder (see *Figure 119: extra_templates folder with user templates*).

The template filename must follow the naming convention <user filename>_<file extension>.ftl in order to generate the corresponding custom file as <user filename>.<file extension>.

By default, the custom file is generated in the user project root folder, next to the .ioc file (see *Figure 120: Project root folder with corresponding custom generated files*).

To generate the custom code in a different folder, the user shall match the destination folder tree structure in the extra_template folder (see *Figure 121: User custom folder for templates*).

G v k v db v extra_templates		- + Search extr 🔎
Organize 🔻 Include in library 👻 Share wi	ith 🔻	Burn » 🔠 🕶 🗍 🔞
 STMicroelectronics STM32Cube STM32CubeMX_4_6 db 	*	Name RTE_Device_h_ftl Sample_h_ftl
extra_templates		
Maine		

Figure 118. extra_templates folder – default content



30-∎	« STM32Cube	MX_4_6_A8 ▶ db i	• extra	a_templates 🕨	•	· ++	Search ex	tr 🔎
Organize 🔻	🍃 Open	Include in library	•	Share with 💌	»	822	• 🔳	0
	STM32CubeMX_ db	4_6	^	Name				
	퉬 extra_templa	tes			h #1			
	🍌 mcu				vice_h_ftl			
	📗 templates			sample	h.ftl			

Figure 119. extra_templates folder with user templates

Figure 120. Project root folder with corresponding custom generated files





of the long last discours its	-					X
🔾 🔾 🗢 🔰 « db 🕨 extra_templates 🕨 MyIr	nc			▼ 4y St	earch My	Inc 🔎
Organize 👻 Include in library 💌 Share v	vith 🔻	Burn	»			?
🛽 闄 STM32CubeMX_4_6	*	Name		^		
4 퉲 db						
A between the second			nc_n.tti			
MyInc						
Þ 퉲 mcu						
D Jugins						
Itemplates						
🍶 help	-	•	III			•

Figure 121. User custom folder for templates

Figure 122. Custom folder with corresponding custom generated files





UM1718

6 Tutorial 1: From pinout to project C code generation using an STM32F4 MCU

This section describes the configuration and C code generation process. It takes as an example a simple LED toggling application running on the STM32F4DISCOVERY board.

6.1 Creating a new STM32CubeMX Project

- 1. Select **File > New project** from the main menu bar or **New project** from the Welcome page.
- 2. Select the MCU Selector tab and filter down the STM32 portfolio by selecting STM32F4 as 'Series', STM32F407 as 'Lines', and LQFP100 as 'Package' (see *Figure 123*).
- 3. Select the STM32F407VGTx from the MCU list and click OK.

		Lines				Package :						
TM32E4	-	STM	: 32E4	07/417	-	LOEP100		-		More Filters	-	
	•,	0		077127	•	2001 200		•	'	-toric Filtera	-	
eripheral Selection				MCUs List: 4 Item	s							
Peripherals	Nb	Max		MCU	Lines		Package	Flash	Ram	Eeprom	IO	E,
ADC				STM32F407VETx	STM3	2F407/417	LQFP 100	512	192	0	83	-
ADC 12-bit	0	16		STM32F407VGTx	STM3	2F407/417	LQFP100	1024	192	0	83	
ADC 16-bit	0	0		STM32F417VETx	STM3	2F407/417	LQFP100	512	192	0	83	
CAN	0	2		STM32F417VGTx	STM3	2F407/417	LOFP 100	1024	192	0	83	
COMP	0	0					-					
CORTEX_EVENT												
DAC 12 bit		2	Ξ									
DAC 12-DIC		2										
Ethernet												
FMC												
FSMC												
HDMI CEC												
			1									
A LINE AND	0	3										
I2C	0	2										
I2C I2S												
I2C I2S IRTIM			1000									
I2C I2S IRTIM LPTIM												
IRCIAN I2C I2S IRTIM LPTIM LPUART												
ICC I2C IRTIM LPTIM LPTIM LPDART OPAMP		0										

Figure 123. MCU selection

Г

DocID025776 Rev 17



STM32CubeMX views are then populated with the selected MCU database (see *Figure 124*).



Figure 124. Pinout view with MCUs selection



Optionally, remove the MCUs Selection bottom window by unselecting **Window> Outputs** sub-menu (see *Figure 125*).







6.2 Configuring the MCU pinout

For a detailed description of menus, advanced actions and conflict resolutions, refer to *Section 4: STM32CubeMX User Interface* and *Appendix A: STM32CubeMX pin assignment rules*.

- 1. By default, STM32CubeMX shows the **Pinout** view.
- By default, Keep Current Signals Placement is unchecked allowing STM32CubeMX to move the peripheral functions around and to find the optimal pin allocation, that is the one that accommodates the maximum number of peripheral modes.
 Since the MCU pin configurations must match the STM32F4DISCOVERY board, enable Keep Current Signals Placement for STM32CubeMX to maintain the peripheral function

allocation (mapping) to a given pin. This setting is saved as a user preference in order to be restored when reopening the tool or when loading another project.

- 3. Select the required peripherals and peripheral modes:
 - a) Configure the GPIO to output the signal on the STM32F4DISCOVERY green LED by right-clicking PD12 from the **Chip** view, then select GPIO_output:

Figure 126. GFIO pill configuration					
	PD14 PD13 PD12 GPIO_Output PD11				
	PD12 GPIO_Output				

PD10

Figure 126. GPIO pin configuration

 Enable a timer to be used as timebase for toggling the LED. This is done by selecting Internal Clock as TIM3 Clock source from the peripheral tree (see *Figure 127*).



- • • TIM3	
Slave Mod	de Disable
Trigger Sc	ource Disable
Clock Sour	irce Internal Clock
Channel1	Disable
Channel2	Disable
····Channel3	Disable
····Channel4	Disable
Combined	d Channels Disable
···· 🚺 Use-E	TR-as-Clearing-Source
	activation
One P	Pulse Mode



c) You can also configure the RCC in order to use an external oscillator as potential clock source (see *Figure 128*).

This completes the pinout configuration for this example.





Note: Starting with STM32CubeMX 4.2, the user can skip the pinout configuration by directly loading ST Discovery board configuration from the Board selector tab.

6.3 Saving the project

1. Click 🗳 to save the project.

When saving for the first time, select a destination folder and filename for the project. The .ioc extension is added automatically to indicate this is an STM32CubeMX configuration file.

Save <u>i</u> n:	STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle	
Recent Items	STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle.ioc	
Desktop		
My		
Documents		
Documents		

Figure 129. Save Project As window

2. Click $\frac{1}{2}$ to save the project under a different name or location.



6.4 Generating the report

Reports can be generated at any time during the configuration:

1. Click 😓 to generate .pdf and .txt reports.

If a project file has not been created yet, a warning prompts the user to save the project first and requests a project name and a destination folder (see *Figure 130*). An .ioc file is then generated for the project along with a .pdf and .txt reports with the same name.

Answering "No" will require to provide a name and location for the report only.

A confirmation message is displayed when the operation has been successful (see *Figure 131*).

Figure 130. Generate Project Report - New project creation

Generate Project Report	
The project name is generally used as report name, but no project is currently saved. If the project is not created now, you will be asked for a report file name	
Would you like to create a project first ?	
Yes No Cancel	

Figure 131. Generate Project Report - Project successfully created

Generate Project Reports						
Reports (Pdf and Text) a	Reports (Pdf and Text) are successfully generated under C:/STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle					
	Open Folder Close					

2. Open the .pdf report using Adobe Reader or the .txt report using your favorite text editor. The reports summarize all the settings and MCU configuration performed for the project.

6.5 Configuring the MCU Clock tree

The following sequence describes how to configure the clocks required by the application based on an STM32F4 MCU.

STM32CubeMX automatically generates the system, CPU and AHB/APB bus frequencies from the clock sources and prescalers selected by the user. Wrong settings are detected and highlighted in red through a dynamic validation of minimum and maximum conditions. Useful tooltips provide a detailed description of the actions to undertake when the settings are unavailable or wrong. User frequency selection can influence some peripheral parameters (e.g. UART baudrate limitation).

STM32CubeMX uses the clock settings defined in the Clock tree view to generate the initialization C code for each peripheral clock. Clock settings are performed in the generated C code as part of RCC initialization within the project main.c and in stm32f4xx_hal_conf.h (HSE, HSI and External clock values expressed in Hertz).



DocID025776 Rev 17

Follow the sequence below to configure the MCU clock tree:

1. Click the **Clock Configuration** tab to display the clock tree (see *Figure 132*).

The internal (HSI, LSI), system (SYSCLK) and peripheral clock frequency fields cannot be edited. The system and peripheral clocks can be adjusted by selecting a clock source, and optionally by using the PLL, prescalers and multipliers.



Figure 132. Clock tree view



2. First select the clock source (HSE, HSI or PLLCLK) that will drive the system clock of the microcontroller.

In the example taken for the tutorial, select HSI to use the internal 16 MHz clock (see *Figure 133*).



Figure 133. HSI clock enabled

To use an external clock source (HSE or LSE), the RCC peripheral shall be configured in the **Pinout** view since pins will be used to connect the external clock crystals (see *Figure 134*).

Figure 134. HSE clock source disabled



Other clock configuration options for the STM32F4DISCOVERY board would have been:

 To select the external HSE source and enter 8 in the HSE input frequency box since an 8 MHz crystal is connected on the discovery board:

Figure 135. HSE clock source enabled



To select the external PLL clock source and the HSI or HSE as the PLL input clock source.

Figure 136. External PLL clock source enabled





_

- 3. Keep the core and peripheral clocks to 16 MHz using HSI, no PLL and no prescaling.
- *Note:* Optionally, further adjust the system and peripheral clocks using PLL, prescalers and multipliers:

Other clock sources independent from the system clock can be configured as follows:

- USB OTG FS, Random Number Generator and SDIO clocks are driven by an independent output of the PLL.
- I2S peripherals come with their own internal clock (PLLI2S), alternatively derived by an independent external clock source.
- USB OTG HS and Ethernet Clocks are derived from an external source.
- 4. Optionally, configure the prescaler for the Microcontroller Clock Output (MCO) pins that allow to output two clocks to the external circuit.
- 5. Click \blacksquare to save the project.
- 6. Go to the **Configuration** tab to proceed with the project configuration.

6.6 Configuring the MCU initialization parameters

Reminder

The C code generated by STM32CubeMX covers the initialization of the MCU peripherals and middlewares using the STM32Cube firmware libraries.

6.6.1 Initial conditions

Select the **Configuration** tab to display the configuration view (see *Figure 137*).

Peripherals and middleware modes without influence on the pinout can be disabled or enabled in the **Peripheral and Middleware Tree** pane. The modes that impact the pin assignments can only be selected through the **Pinout** tab.

In the main panel, tooltips and warning messages are displayed when peripherals are not properly configured (see Section 4: STM32CubeMX User Interface for details).

Note: The **RCC** peripheral initialization will use the parameter configuration done in this view as well as the configuration done in the Clock tree view (clock source, frequencies, prescaler values, etc...).



	gait				
STM32CubeMX Untitled*: STM32F407VGTx					
File Project Window Help					
💽 🖻 🖶 🎂 💁 🔶 🦊					
Pinout Clock Configuration Configuration Power Consumption	Calculator DB Editor				
Configuration					
MiddleWares					
FATES					
User-defined					
☐ ● FREERTOS					
Enabled					
Peripherals			Middlewares		
Activated					
IWDG					
Activated					
	Multimedia	Connectivity	Analog	System	Control
High Speed Clock (HSE):BYPASS Clock Source					
e e RNG					тімз 📿
Activated					
				GPIO -	
Clock Source Internal Clock					
- • IIM6				NVIC -	
Activated					
····· One Pulse Mode				RCC	
□ • • • TIM7					
Civated					
One Pulse Mode					
⊨					·
Activated					
	•				•

Figure 137. Configuration view

6.6.2 Configuring the peripherals

Each peripheral instance corresponds to a dedicated button in the main panel.

Some peripheral modes have no configurable parameters as illustrated below:

Figure 138. Case of Peripheral and Middleware without configuration parameters





Follow the steps below to proceed with peripheral configuration:

- 1. Click the peripheral button to open the corresponding configuration window. In our example,
 - a) Click TIM3 to open the timer configuration window.

onfigure the below parameters :	NVIC Settings
	Search : 🔤 🔶 目
Counter Settings	
Prescaler (PSC - 16 bits value)	0
Counter Mode	Up
Counter Period (AutoReload Register - 1	6 bits value) 0
Internal Clock Division (CKD)	No Division
Trigger Output (TRGO) Parameters	
Master/Slave Mode	Disable (no sync between this TIM (Master) and its Slaves
Trigger Event Selection	Reset (UG bit from TIMx_EGR)
Prescaler (PSC - 16 bits value) Prescaler must be between 0 and 65 535.	

Figure 139. Timer 3 configuration window



b) With a 16 MHz APB clock (Clock tree view), set the prescaler to 16000 and the counter period to 1000 to make the LED blink every millisecond.

🖋 Parameter Settings 🛛 🖋 User Constants 📝 NVIC Settin	igs 🖉 DMA Settings
onfigure the below parameters :	
	Search : 🔤 🗣 💧
 Counter Settings 	
Prescaler (PSC - 16 bits value)	16000 💌
Counter Mode	Up
Counter Period (AutoReload Register - 16 bits value)	0
Internal Clock Division (CKD)	No Division
Trigger Output (TRGO) Parameters	
Master/Slave Mode	Disable (no sync between this TIM (Master) and its Slaves
Trigger Event Selection	Reset (UG bit from TIMx_EGR)
Prescaler (PSC - 16 bits value) Prescaler must be between 0 and 65 535.	

Figure 140. Timer 3 configuration

- 2. Optionally and when available, select:
 - The NVIC Settings tab to display the NVIC configuration and enable interruptions for this peripheral.
 - The DMA Settings tab to display the DMA configuration and to configure DMA transfers for this peripheral.

In the tutorial example, the DMA is not used and the GPIO settings remain unchanged. The interrupt is enabled as shown in *Figure 141*.

- The GPIO Settings tab to display the GPIO configuration and to configure the GPIOs for this peripheral.
- Insert an item:
- The **User Constants** tab to specify constants to be used in the project.
- 3. Modify and click Apply or OK to save your modifications.



Figure 141. Enabling Timer 3 interrupt

V Parameter Settings V User Constants V NVIC Settings					
Interrupt Table	Enabled	Preemption Priority	Sub Priority		
	Enableu		Sub Priority		

6.6.3 Configuring the GPIOs

The user can adjust all pin configurations from this window. A small icon along with a tooltip indicates the configuration status.

Figure 142. GPIO configuration color scheme and tool
--

GPIO ->>	
GPIO: General Purpose Input Output	
This IP is correctly configured. You can gen	nerate code using current valu

Follow the sequence below to configure the GPIOS:

- 1. Click the **GPIO button** in the Configuration view to open the **Pin Configuration** window below.
- 2. The first tab shows the pins that have been assigned a GPIO mode but not for a dedicated peripheral and middleware. Select a Pin Name to open the configuration for that pin.

In the tutorial example, select PD12 and configure it in output push-pull mode to drive the STM32F4DISCOVERY LED (see *Figure 143*).



Figure 14	43. GPIO	mode	configuration
-----------	----------	------	---------------

Pin Configuration	on					×
GPIO						
Search Signals Search (Crtl+F)					Show	only Modified Pins
Pin Name	Signal on Pin	GPIO mode	GPIO Pull-up/Pu	Maximum outpu	User Label	Modified
PD14	n/a	Output Push Pull	No pull-up and no	Low	LD4 [Green Led]	V
PD 14 Configuration GPIO mode GPIO Pull-up/Pull-d	own		Output Push	n Pull nd no pull-down		•
Maximum output sp	peed		Low			•
User Label			LD4 [Green I	.ed]	Apply	Cancel
Group by IP						

3. Click **Apply** then **Ok** to close the window.

6.6.4 Configuring the DMAs

This is not required for the example taken for the tutorial.

It is recommended to use DMA transfers to offload the CPU. The DMA Configuration window provides a fast and easy way to configure the DMAs (see *Figure 144*).

- 1. Add a new DMA request and select among a list of possible configurations.
- 2. Select among the available streams.
- 3. Select the Direction: Memory to Peripheral or Peripheral to Memory.
- 4. Select a Priority.
- *Note:* Configuring the DMA for a given peripheral and middleware can also be performed using the Peripheral and Middleware configuration window.



MA1 DMA2 MemToMe	m			
DMA Request	Stream	Direction	Priority	
I2C1_RX	DMA1 Stream 0	Peripheral To Memory	Low	
Select I2C1_TX TIM3_CH4/UP				
			Add	Delete
DMA Request Settings		Per	ipheral	Delete
DMA Request Settings Mode Normal	•	Per Increment Add	ipheral	Memory

Figure 144. DMA Parameters configuration window

6.6.5 Configuring the middleware

This is not required for the example taken for the tutorial.

If a peripheral is required for a middleware mode, the peripheral must be configured in the **Pinout** view for the middleware mode to become available. A tooltip can guide the user as illustrated in the FatFs example below:

 i igure 145. i aŭ s disabled
Configuration
FAITS External SRAM SD Card
USB Disk
FRE Active only with USB Host (class MSC) middleware
⊕

Figure 145. FatFs disabled

DocID025776 Rev 17



1. Configure the USB peripheral from the **Pinout** view.

Figure 146. USB Host configuration

USB_OTG_FS
Mode Host_Only
Activate_SOF
Activate_VBUS

- 2. Select MSC_FS class from USB Host middleware.
- 3. Select the checkbox to enable FatFs USB mode in the tree panel.

Figure 147. FatFs over USB mode enabled

FATFS		
External SE	RAM	
External SR	AM	
····· 🔄 SD Card		
···· 📝 USB Disk		
User-define	d	
⊕- 💿 LWIP		
⊕- 💿 USB_DEVICE		
🖨 💿 USB_HOST		
····Class for HS IP	Disable	-
Class for FS IP	Mass Storage Host Class	-

4. Select the **Configuration** view. FatFs and USB buttons are then displayed.

Figure 148. Configuration view with FatFs and USB enabled

	FAT	Middlewares	•~~v	
Multimedia	USB_FS	Analog	System DMA	Control



5. FatFs and USB using default settings are already marked as configured . Click FatFs and USB buttons to display default configuration settings. You can also change them by following the guidelines provided at the bottom of the window.



🖋 IPs instances 🗹 Set Defines		
Configure the below parameters :		
USBH		
USBH instance	USB Host MSC FS	
	Apply Ok	Cancel



onfigure the below parameters :	
Curstian Developmentary	Le contra de la co
	Dischlad
FS_TINY	Disabled
FS_READONLY (Read-only mode)	Disabled
USE_STREUNC (Use String Functions)	Enabled WITH LF -> CKLF CONVERSION
USE_MKFS	Enabled
	Disabled
USE_LABEL	Disabled
USE_FASTSEEK	Enabled
Locale and Namespace Parameters	
Physical Drive Parameters	
E System Parameters	
S MINIMIZE (Minimization level)	
FS_MINIMIZE	
Parameter Description:	
Fhe FS_MINIMIZE option defines minimization level to rem	nove some functions.
	e futime and frename are removed
J: Full luncuon. I: f stat f getfree f unlink f mkdir f chmod f truncate	s, i_dame and i_rename are removed.
 Full function. f_stat, f_getfree, f_unlink, f_mkdir, f_chmod, f_truncate f_opendir and f_readdir are removed in addition to 1. 	
 Fun function. f_stat, f_getfree, f_unlink, f_mkdir, f_chmod, f_truncate f_opendir and f_readdir are removed in addition to 1. f_lseek is removed in addition to 2. 	
 Fini function. f_stat, f_getfree, f_unlink, f_mkdir, f_chmod, f_truncate f_opendir and f_readdir are removed in addition to 1. f_lseek is removed in addition to 2. 	



6.7 Generating a complete C project

6.7.1 Setting project options

Default project settings can be adjusted prior to C code generation as described in *Figure 151*.

- 1. Select **Settings** from the **Project** menu to open the Project settings window.
- 2. Select the **Project Tab** and choose a Project **name**, **location** and a **toolchain** to generate the project (see *Figure 151*).

Project Settings	×
Project Code Generator Advanced Settings	
Project Settings	
Draigst Name	
STM220. hs. Simplet adTabela	
STM32Cube_SimpleLedToggle	
Project Location	
C:\Users\JohnDoe\STM32Cube projects\	Browse
Toolchain Folder Location	
C:\Users\JohnDoe\STM32Cube projects\STM32Cube_SimpleLedToggle\	
Toolchain / IDE	
EWARM	
EWARM	
MDK-ARM V4	
MDK-ARM V5	
TrueSTUDIO	
SW4STM32	
Other Toolchains (GPDSC)	
Mcu and Firmware Package Mcu Reference STM32F427ZGTx	
Firmware Package Name and Version	
STM32Cube FW_F4 V1.11.0RC2	est available version
Ok	Cancel

Figure 151. Project Settings and toolchain choice



- 3. Select the Code Generator tab to choose various C code generation options:
 - The library files copied to *Projects* folder.
 - C code regeneration (e.g. what is kept or backed up during C code regeneration).
 - HAL specific action (e.g. set all free pins as analog I/Os to reduce MCU power consumption).

In the tutorial example, select the settings as displayed in the figure below and click OK.

Note: A dialog window appears when the firmware package is missing. Go to next section for explanation on how to download the firmware package.

-	Advanced Settings			
STM32Cube Firmware L	ibrary Package			
Copy all used librar	ies into the project folder			
Copy only the nece	essary library files			
Add necessary libra	ary files as reference in t	e toolchain project co	onfiguration file	
Generated files				
Cenerate periphera	al initialization as a pair of	'.c/.h' files per IP		
Backup previously	generated files when re-g	enerating		
📝 Keep User Code w	hen re-generating			
🔽 Delete previously g	generated files when not r	e-generated		
HAL Settings				
Set all free pins as	analog (to optimize the p	ower consumption)		
Enable Full Assert				
Taurdata Cattiana				
Select a template to co	perate sustamized code			Sattings
Select a template to ge	nerate customized code			Setungs

Figure 152. Project Settings menu - Code Generator tab

DocID025776 Rev 17



6.7.2 Downloading firmware package and generating the C code

1. Click 🧅 to generate the C code.

During C code generation, STM32CubeMX copies files from the relevant STM32Cube firmware package into the project folder so that the project can be compiled. When generating a project for the first time, the firmware package is not available on the user PC and a warning message is displayed:

Figure 153. Missing firmware package warning message

Project	Manager Settings	×
<u>^</u>	The Firmware Package (STM32Cube FW_F4 V1.11.0) Do you want to download this now $?$	or one of its dependencies required by the Project is not available in your STM32CubeMX Repository.
		<u>Y</u> es <u>N</u> o

 STM32CubeMX offers to download the relevant firmware package or to go on. Click Download to obtain a complete project, that is a project ready to be used in the selected IDE.

By clicking **Continue**, only *Inc* and *Src* folders will be created, holding STM32CubeMX generated initialization files. The necessary firmware and middleware libraries will have to be copied manually to obtain a complete project.

If the download fails, the below error message is displayed:

Figure 154. Error during download

Problem during Download and/or Unzip	X
Error during Access to HTTP Server. Please check Proxy settings under 'Help > Updater Settings > Connection	ion Parameters'.

To solve this issue, execute the next two steps. Skip them otherwise.



3. Select **Help > Updater settings menu** and adjust the connection parameters to match your network configuration.

Updater Setting	gs Connection Parameters		
Proxy Server	Туре		
No Proxy	1		
🔘 Use Syst	em Proxy Parameters		
Manual (Configuration of Proxy Server		
Manual Card	in the of Dense Comme		
-Manual Cont	guration of Proxy Server		
Proxy HTTP	do.it.mycompany.com		Port 8080
Authentificat	ion		
Require	Authentification		
User Loggin	JohnDoe		
Password	••••		
		💦 💢 Check	Connection

Figure 155. Updater settings for download

4. Click **Check connection.** The check mark turns green once the connection is established.





Updater Setting	gs Connection Parameters	
Proxy Server	гТүре	
No Proxy	Ý	
O Use Syst	tem Proxy Parameters	
Manual	Configuration of Proxy Server	
Manual Conf	iguration of Proxy Server	
Proxy HTTP	do.it.mycompany.com Port 8080	
Authentificat	ion	
Require	Authentification	
Liser Loggin		-
USEI LUggin	Johnboe	_ .
Password	•••••	
	Charl Constitut	
	Check Connection	

Figure 156. Updater settings with connection

5. Once the connection is functional, click $\stackrel{4}{\bigcirc}$ to generate the C code. The C code generation process starts and progress is displayed as illustrated in the next figures.

Figure 157. Downloading the firmware package

Download selected Firmware & Software
Download File stm32cube_fw_f4_v080.zip 2.9 MBytes / 54.8 MBytes
Download and Unzip selected Files
OK Cancel





6. Finally, a confirmation message is displayed to indicate that the C code generation has been successful.

Figure 159. C code generation completion message

💿 Cod	Code Generation	
	The Code is successfully generated under C:/STM32CubeMX_Projects/STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle	
	Open Folder Open Project Close	


Click Open Folder to display the generated project contents or click Open Project to open the project directly in your IDE. Then proceed with Section 6.8.

File Edite Minus Table Male	, Search Stribzeube_sumptezeu
<u>File Edit View Tools H</u> elp	
Organize 🔹 🧊 Open 🛛 Include in library	• » 🔠 • 🗍 🔞
▲], STM32Cube_SimpleLedToggle	Name
 L Drivers Inc Middlewares Projects Src 	 Drivers Inc Middlewares Projects Src STM32Cube_SimpleLedToggle.ioc

Figure 160. C code generation output folder

The generated project contains:

- The STM32CubeMX .ioc project file located in the root folder. It contains the project user configuration and settings generated through STM32CubeMX user interface.
- The *Drivers* and *Middlewares* folders hold copies of the firmware package files relevant for the user configuration.
- The *Projects* folder contains IDE specific folders with all the files required for the project development and debug within the IDE.
- The *Inc* and *Src* folders contain STM32CubeMX generated files for middleware, peripheral and GPIO initialization, including the main.c file. The STM32CubeMX generated files contain user-dedicated sections allowing to insert user-defined C code.
- **Caution:** C code written within the user sections is preserved at next C code generation, while C code written outside these sections is overwritten.

User C code will be lost if user sections are moved or if user sections delimiters are renamed.



6.8 Building and updating the C code project

This example explains how to use the generated initialization C code and complete the project, within IAR EWARM toolchain, to have the LED blink according to the TIM3 frequency.

A folder is available for the toolchains selected for C code generation: the project can be generated for more than one toolchain by choosing a different toolchain from the Project Settings menu and clicking Generate code once again.

1. Open the project directly in the IDE toolchain by clicking **Open Project** from the dialog window or by double-clicking the relevant IDE file available in the toolchain folder under STM32CubeMX generated project directory (see *Figure 159*).

<u>File Edit View Iools H</u> elp Organize ▼ Include in library ▼ Share with ▼	Burn New folder 🔠 🕶 🗍 🔞
 STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle Drivers EWARM Inc MDK-ARM Src SW4STM32 TrueSTUDIO 	Name Drivers EWARM Inc MDK-ARM Src SW4STM32 TrueSTUDIO .mxproject STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle.ioc STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle.txt STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle.configuration.pdf

Figure 161. C code generation output: Projects folder





2. As an example, select .eww file to load the project in the IAR EWARM IDE.

<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp		
Organize 🔹 🎉 Open 🔹 Burn 🛛 New fold	er 🔠 🔻	
 STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle Drivers EWARM Inc MDK-ARM Src SW4STM32 TrueSTUDIO 	 Name settings STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle Configura Project.eww STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle.ewd STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle.ewp stm32f407xx_flash.icf stm32f407xx_sram.icf 	Date modifie 7/28/2015 2:4 7/28/2015 2:3 7/28/2015 2:3 7/28/2015 2:3 7/28/2015 2:3 7/16/2015 5:5 7/16/2015 5:5
Project.eww Date modified: 7/28/201 IAR IDE Workspace Size: 169 byte	E III 5 2:39 PM Date created: 7/28/2015 2:39 PM 5	,

Figure 162. C code generation for EWARM



3. Select the main.c file to open in editor.

<pre>le Edit View Project Tools Window Help le Edit View Project Tools Window Help le Edit View Project Tools Window Help le Edit View Project Tools Window Project Pr</pre>	Project - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE	
Image:	ile <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew <u>P</u> roject <u>T</u> ools <u>W</u> indow <u>H</u> elp	
M32Cube_impletedToggle imance <		
Will Southe_simpleLedToggle /* * Includes /* * USER CODE END Includes */ * USER CODE END Includes		
<pre>/* Includes</pre>	CTM2020.ke sizelel edTeerle Cenfermation -	main.c*
Files the file of the system clock +/ System clock subjected Toggle // USER code BEGIN 1 cludes */ /* USER code BEGIN 1 */ /* USER code BEGIN 2 */ /* USER code BEGIN 3 */ } SIM2204e_impletedToggle */ */* USER code BEGIN 3 */ } SIM2204e_impletedToggle */	• TM32Cube_simpleLear oggie Conliguration	/* Includes
Image: State of the system clock */ System clock state system clock state system clock */ System clock state system clock state system clock */ System clock state state state state state state state	Files 👫 🖄	/t USER CODE BEGIN Includes t/
<pre>/* Private variables</pre>	🛛 🗇 STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle 🗸	/* USER CODE END Includes */
<pre>/* Frivate variables</pre>		
User IIM BandleTypeDef htmls; IIM BandleTypeDef htmls; IIIM BandleTypeDef htmls; IIIIM BandleTypeDef html; IIIII Thmlife IIIIII IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII	EWARM	/* Private variables
<pre>/* USER CODE BEGIN FV */ /* DISER CODE BEGIN FV */ /* DISER CODE BEGIN FV */ /* DISER CODE BEGIN FV */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 0 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 0 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 1 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ } /* USER COD</pre>		TIM_HandleTypeDef htim3;
<pre>/* Private Variables</pre>	Here in main.c	/* USER CODE BEGIN PV */
<pre></pre>	E stm32t4xx_hal_msp.c	/* Private variables
<pre>/* Private function prototypes void SystemClock_Config(void); static void MX_TIM3_Init(void); /* USER CODE BEGIN 0 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 0 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 0 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 1 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 1 */ /* WSER CODE BEGIN 1 */ /* MCU Configuration /* Reset of all peripherals, Initializes the Flash interface and the Sy. HAL_Int(); /* Configure the system clock */ SystemClock_Config(); /* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ } SIM322ube_simpleLedTogge</pre>	E stm 3214xx_it.c	/* USER CODE END PV */
<pre>void SystemClock_Config(void); static void KK_GPTO_Init(void); static void KK_GPTO_Init(void); /* USER CODE BEOIN PFP +/ /* USER CODE BEOIN 0 */ int main(void) { /* USER CODE BEOIN 0 */ int main(void) { /* USER CODE BEOIN 1 */ /* USER CODE BEOIN 1 */ /* WSER CODE BEOIN 1 */ /* WSER CODE BEOIN 1 */ /* Reset of all peripherals, Initializes the Flash interface and the Sy, HAL_Init(); /* Configure the system clock */ SystemClock_Config(); /* USER CODE BEOIN 2 */ /* USER CODE BEOIN 3 */ } SIM32Cube_simpleLedToggle * UNER CODE END 3 */ } </pre>		/* Private function prototypes
<pre>static void MX_GETO_Init(void); static void MX_TIM3_Init(void); /* USER CODE BECODE BERD PEP +/ /* USER CODE BERD PEP +/ /* USER CODE BERD 0 */ /* USER CODE BERD 0 */ /* USER CODE BERD 1 */ /* USER CODE BERD 1 */ /* USER CODE BERD 1 */ /* MCU Configuration</pre>		<pre>void SystemClock_Config(void);</pre>
<pre>static void MX_TIM3_Init(void); /* USER CODE BEGIN PFP */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 0 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 0 */ int main(void) /* USER CODE BEGIN 1 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 1 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 1 */ /* WOU Configuration</pre>		<pre>static void MX_GPIO_Init(void);</pre>
<pre>/* USER CODE BEGIN PFP */ /* USER CODE END PFP */ /* USER CODE END 0 */ int main(void) { /* USER CODE BEGIN 1 */ /* WSU Configuration</pre>		<pre>static void MX_TIM3_Init(void);</pre>
<pre>/* USER CODE END FFP */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 0 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 0 */ int main(void) { /* USER CODE BEGIN 1 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */ /* Initialize all configured peripherals */ MX_GPIO_Init(); MX_TIM3_Init(); /* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ } SIM32Cube_simpleLedToggle /* USER CODE END 3 */ } </pre>		/* USER CODE BEGIN PFP */
<pre>/* USER CODE BEGIN 0 */ /* USER CODE END 0 */ int main(void) { /* USER CODE END 1 */ /* USER CODE END 1 */ /* WUE Configuration/* Reset of all peripherals, Initializes the Flash interface and the Sy, HAL_Init(); /* Configure the system clock */ SystemClock Config(); /* Initialize all configured peripherals */ MK_GFUG_Init(); /* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ } INIA22Cube_simpleLedToggle /* USER CODE END 3 */ } </pre>		/* USER CODE END PFP */
<pre>/* USER CODE END 0 */ int main(void) /* USER CODE BEGIN 1 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 1 */ /* USER CODE END 1 */ /* WOU Configuration</pre>		/+ NCED CODE RECTN 0 +/
<pre>int main(void) { /* USER CODE BEGIN 1 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 1 */ /* USER CODE SEDD 1 */ /* MCU Configuration /* Reset of all peripherals, Initializes the Flash interface and the Sy. HAL Init(); /* Configure the system clock */ SystemClock_Config(); /* Initialize all configured peripherals */ MK GFUC Init(); /* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ } /* USER CODE END 3 */ } /* USER CODE END 3 */ } /* USER CODE END 3 */ } </pre>		/* USER CODE END 0 */
<pre></pre>		int main (void)
<pre>/* USER CODE BEGIN 1 */ /* USER CODE ERD 1 */ /* USER CODE END 1 */ /* WCU Configuration /* Reset of all peripherals, Initializes the Flash interface and the Sy. HAL_Init(): /* Configure the system clock */ SystemClock_Config(): /* Initialize all configured peripherals */ MX_GFIO_Init(): /* USER CODE EBGIN 2 */ /* USER CODE EBGIN 2 */ /* USER CODE EBGIN 9 */ /* USER CODE EBGIN 9 */ /* USER CODE EBGIN 3 */ } STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle /* UNIT Configured Decision 1 */ } </pre>		
<pre>/* USER CODE END 1 */ /* MCU Configuration</pre>		/* USER CODE BEGIN 1 */
<pre>/* MCU Configuration</pre>		/* USER CODE END 1 */
<pre>HAL_Init(); HAL_Init(); /* Configure the system clock */ SystemClock_Config(); /* Initialize all configured peripherals */ MX_GPIO_Init(); MX_TIM3_Init(); /* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN WHILE */ while (1) { /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ } /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ } STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle * III </pre>		/* MCU Configuration
<pre>/* Configure the system clock */ SystemClock_Config(); /* Initialize all configured peripherals */ MX_GPT_INITY, MX_GPT_INI</pre>		HAL Thit():
SystemClock_Config(); /* Initialize all configured peripherals */ MX_GPIO_Init(); MX_TIM3_Init(); /* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN WHILE */ while (1) { /* USER CODE END WHILE */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ } /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ } STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle		/* Configure the system clock */
<pre>/* Initialize all configured peripherals */ MX_GPIO_Init(); MX_IIM3_Init(); /* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN #HILE */ /* USER CODE BEGIN #HILE */ while (1) { /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ } /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ } STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle </pre>		SystemClock_Config();
MX_GPIO_Init(); MX_TIM3_Init(); MX_TIM3_Init(); /* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN WHILE */ while (1) { /* USER CODE END WHILE */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ } /* USER CODE END 3 */ } /* USER CODE END 3 */ } STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle		<pre>/* Initialize all configured peripherals */</pre>
MX_TIM3_Init(); /* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN WHILE */ while (1) { /* USER CODE END WHILE */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ } /* USER CODE END 3 */ } STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle		MX_GPIO_Init();
<pre>/* USER CODE BIGIN 2 */ /* USER CODE END 2 */ /* USER CODE END */ /* USER CODE BEGIN WHILE */ while (1) { /* USER CODE END WHILE */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ } /* USER CODE END 3 */ } STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle </pre>		MX_TIM3_Init();
<pre>/* USER CODE END 2 */ /* USER CODE BEGIN WHILE */ while (1) { /* USER CODE END WHILE */ /* USER CODE END WHILE */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ } /* USER CODE END 3 */ } /* USER CODE END 3 */ } </pre>		/* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */ /* USER CODE END 2 */
/* USER CODE BEGIN WHILE */ while (1) { /* USER CODE END WHILE */ /* USER CODE END WHILE */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ } /* USER CODE END 3 */ } STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle		/* Infinite loop */
while (1) { /* USER CODE END WHILE */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ } /* USER CODE END 3 */ } STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle		/* USER CODE BEGIN WHILE */
image: simpleLedToggle image: simpleLedToggle		while (1)
<pre>/* USER CODE END WHILE */ /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ } /* USER CODE END 3 */ } STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle </pre>		
/* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */ /* USER CODE END 3 */ /* USER CODE END 3 */ 3TM32Cube_simpleLedToggle		/* USER CODE END WHILE */
STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle		/* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */
STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle		/* USER CODE END 3 */
STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle		
STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle		
	STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle	4 <u> </u>
	adv	In 51 Col 1 System NI

Figure 163. STM32CubeMX generated project open in IAR IDE

The htim3 structure handler, system clock, GPIO and TIM3 initialization functions are defined. The initialization functions are called in the main.c. For now the user C code sections are empty.



4. In the IAR IDE, right-click the project name and select **Options**.

STM32Cube_Simpl	eLedToggle Configurati	on	•
Files	4	82	o:
E STM32Cube	_SimpleLedToggle	× .	
🛛 🛏 🗀 Application			
📙 🕀 🗀 Drivers			
📙 🕀 🚞 Example			. *
🗆 🖵 🗀 Output			

Figure 164. IAR options

5. Click the ST-LINK category and make sure SWD is selected to communicate with the STM32F4DISCOVERY board. Click OK.

IAR ROM-monitor 2000 KHz 1-jet/JTAGjet J-Link/J-Trace TI Stellaris Macraigor PE micro
ST-LINK

Figure 165. SWD connection



6. Select **Project > Rebuild all**. Check if the project building has succeeded.

Figure 166. Project building log	
Messages	
stm32f4xx_hal_tim.c stm32f4xx_hal_tim_ex.c stm32f4xx_it.c stm32f4xx_II_sdmmc.c system_stm32f4xx.c Linking	
Total number of errors: 0	
Total number of warnings: 0	

Figure 166. Project building log

7. Add user C code in the dedicated user sections **only**.

Note:

The main while(1) loop is placed in a user section.

For example:

- a) Edit the main.c file.
- b) To start timer 3, update User Section 2 with the following C code:

Figure 167. User Section 2

```
HAL_Init();
/* Configure the system clock */
SystemClock_Config();
/* Initialize all configured peripherals */
MX_GPIO_Init();
MX_TIM3_Init();
/* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */
HAL_TIM_Base_Start_IT(&htim3);
/* USER CODE END 2 */
/* Infinite loop */
/* USER CODE BEGIN WHILE */
while (1)
{
```

c) Then, add the following C code in User Section 4:

Figure 168. User Section 4



DocID025776 Rev 17



This C code implements the weak callback function defined in the HAL timer driver (stm32f4xx_hal_tim.h) to toggle the GPIO pin driving the green LED when the timer counter period has elapsed.

- 8. Rebuild and program your board using *P*. Make sure the SWD ST-LINK option is checked as a Project options otherwise board programming will fail.
- 9. Launch the program using 2. The green LED on the STM32F4DISCOVERY board will blink every second.
- To change the MCU configuration, go back to STM32CubeMX user interface, implement the changes and regenerate the C code. The project will be updated, preserving the C code in the user sections if Keep Current Signals Placement option in Project Settings is enabled.

6.9 Switching to another MCU

STM32CubeMX allows loading a project configuration on an MCU of the same series.

Proceed as follows:

- 1. Select File > New Project.
- 2. Select an MCU belonging to the same series. As an example, you can select the STM32F429ZITx that is the core MCU of the 32F429IDISCOVERY board.
- Select File > Import project. In the Import project window, browse to the .ioc file to load. A message warns you that the currently selected MCU (STM32F429ZITx) differs from the one specified in the .ioc file (STM32F407VGTx). Several import options are proposed (see *Figure 169*).
- 4. Click the **Try Impor**t button and check the import status to verify if the import succeeded (see *Figure 170*).
- 5. Click OK to really import the project. An output tab is then displayed to report the import results.
- 6. The green LED on 32F429IDISCOVERY board is connected to PG13: CTRL+ right click PD12 and drag and drop it on PG13.
- 7. Select **Project** > **Settings** to configure the new project name and folder location. Click **Generate icon** to save the project and generate the code.
- 8. Select **Open the project** from the dialog window, update the user sections with the user code, making sure to update the GPIO settings for PG13. Build the project and flash the board. Launch the program and check that LED blinks once per second.



Impor	ted Project
:\ST	M32CubeMX_Projects\4_10_UM\STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle\STM32Cube_simpleLedToggle.ioc
Impor	t MX Settings
In	nport PCC settings
V İn	nport Project Settings
Impor	t Pinout/Clock Configuration/Configuration Settings
A	utomatic Import
© M	anual Import
	Import Pinning Status
	Import Peripherals Configuration
	Peripheral List
	V NVIC
	V RCC
	√ TIM3
	V GPIO
	Try Import Show View Pinout -
Impo	ort Status
Im	port Analysis: C:\STM32CubeMX_Projects\4_10_UM\STM32Cube_simple
4	The Mcu (STM32F407VGTx) found in the Project being imported is
4	4

Figure 169. Import Project menu

Figure 170. Project Import status



DocID025776 Rev 17



7 Tutorial 2 - Example of FatFs on an SD card using STM32429I-EVAL evaluation board

The tutorial consists in creating and writing to a file on the STM32429I-EVAL1 SD card using the FatFs file system middleware.

To generate a project and run tutorial 2, follow the sequence below:

- 1. Launch STM32CubeMX.
- 2. Select File > New Project. The Project window opens.
- 3. Click the **Board Selector** Tab to display the list of ST boards.
- 4. Select **EvalBoard** as type of Board and **STM32F4** as series to filter down the list.
- 5. Leave the option **Initialize all peripherals with their default mode** unchecked so that the code is generated only for the peripherals used by the application.
- 6. Select the STM32429I-EVAL board and click OK. The **Pinout** view is loaded, matching the MCU pinout configuration on the evaluation board (see *Figure 171*).

Vendor •	Type	a of Boar	d · MCL	Series ·		
CTMicroelectropics	Type	Peard	u. MCC	10064		
SIMicroelectronics	▼ Eva	Board	▼ SIN	132⊢4 ▼		
Initialize all IP with their de	efault Mode					>>
Peripheral Selection			Boards List: 5 Items			
Peripherals	Nb	Max	Туре	Reference	MCU	
Accelerometer		N/A	EvalBoard	STM3240G-EVAL	STM32F407IG	
Analog I/O	0	0	EvalBoard	STM3241G-EVAL	STM32F417IG	
Audio Line In		N/A	EvalBoard	STM32429I-EVAL1	STM32F429NI	
Audio Line Out		N/A	EvalBoard	STM32439I-EVAL2	STM32F439NI	
Button	0	3	EvalBoard	STM32446E-EVAL	STM32F446ZE	
CAN	0	2				
Camera		N/A				
Compass		N/A				
🕘 Digital I/O	0	172				
Eeprom		N/A				
Ethernet		N/A				
Flash Memory	0	1				
Graphic Lcd Display		N/A				
Gyroscope		N/A				
🕘 IrDA		N/A				
Joystick		N/A				
Lcd Display		N/A				
Led	0	4				
Light Sensor		N/A				
Memory Card		N/A				
Micro	0	2				
Potentiometer		N/A				
Pressure Sensor		N/A				
RS-232	0	1				
@RS-485		N/A				
SRAM/SDRAM	0	2				
Speaker		N/A				
I emperature Sensor		N/A				
I ouch Key Sensing		N/A				
USB	0	3				

Figure 171. Board selection



7. From the Peripheral tree on the left, expand the SDIO peripheral and select the SD 4 bits wide bus (see *Figure 172*).

- A CDT		
	,	
Mode	SD 4 bits Wide bus	

8. Under the Middlewares category, check "SD Card" as FatFs mode (see *Figure 173*).



Figure 173. FatFs mode configuration

- 9. Configure the clocks as follows:
 - a) Select the RCC peripheral from the **Pinout** view (see *Figure 174*).

Figure 174. RCC peripheral configuration

-High Speed Clock (HSE)	Crystal/Ceramic Resonator	-
-Low Speed Clock (LSE)	Disable	-



b) Configure the clock tree from the clock tab (see *Figure 175*).



Figure 175. Clock tree view

10. In the **Project Settings** menu, specify the project name and destination folder. Then, select the EWARM IDE toolchain.

oject Code Generator				
Project Settings				
Project Name				
fatfs_sd_test				
Project Location				
C:\STM32CubeMX_Project	s\\$TM32F429NI-STM32F429I-EVAL1			Browse
C:\STM32CubeMX_Project	s\STM32F429NI-STM32F429I-EVAL1\fatf	fs_sd_tes	st\	
Toolchain / IDE				
Toolchain / IDE EWARM Mcu and Firmware Package		•		
Toolchain / IDE EWARM Mcu and Firmware Package Mcu Reference		•		
Toolchain / IDE EWARM Mcu and Firmware Package Mcu Reference STM32F429NIHx		•		
Toolchain / IDE EWARM Mcu and Firmware Package Mcu Reference STM32F429NIHx Firmware Package Name an	d Version	•		
Toolchain / IDE EWARM Mcu and Firmware Package Mcu Reference STM32F429NIHx Firmware Package Name an STM32Cube FW_F4 V1.8.0	d Version	• •	Vse late	st available version
Toolchain / IDE EWARM Mcu and Firmware Package Mcu Reference STM32F429NIHx Firmware Package Name an STM32Cube FW_F4 V1.8.0	d Version	• •	▽ Use late	st available version
Toolchain / IDE EWARM Mcu and Firmware Package Mcu Reference STM32F429NIHx Firmware Package Name an STM32Cube FW_F4 V1.8.0	d Version	• •	Vse late	st available version
Toolchain / IDE EWARM Mcu and Firmware Package Mcu Reference STM32F429NIHx Firmware Package Name ar STM32Cube FW_F4 V1.8.0	d Version	• •	⊽ Use late	st available version
Toolchain / IDE EWARM Mcu and Firmware Package Mcu Reference STM32F429NIHx Firmware Package Name an STM32Cube FW_F4 V1.8.0	d Version	T	Vse late	st available version

Figure 176. Project Settings menu - Code Generator tab



- 11. Click **Ok**. Then, on the toolbar menu, click 🎐 to generate the project.
- 12. Upon code generation completion, click **Open Project** in the **Code Generation** dialog window (see *Figure 177*). This opens the project directly in the IDE.



Code Generation	72.4	×
The Code is succes	sfully generated under C:/STM32CubeMX_Projects/STM32F4.	29NI-STM32F429I-EVAL1/fatfs_sd_test
	Open Folder Open Project Close	

 In the IDE, check that heap and stack sizes are sufficient: right click the project name and select Options, then select Linker. Check **Override default** to use the icf file from STM32CubeMX generated project folder. Adjust the heap and stack sizes (see *Figure 178*).



Category:	Factory Settings
General Options Static Analysis Runtime Checking C/C++ Compiler Assembler Output Converter Custom Build Build Actions Linker Debugger Simulator Angel CMSIS DAP GDB Server IAR ROM-monitor I-jet/JTAGjet J-Link/J-Trace TI Stellaris Macraigor	Config Library Input Optimizations Advanced Output List Image: Advanced Image: Advanced
PE micro RDI ST-LINK Third-Party Driver TI XDS	Linker configuration file editor

DocID025776 Rev 17



```
Note:
                       When using the MDK-ARM toolchain, go to the Application/MDK-ARM folder and double-
                      click the startup_xx.s file to edit and adjust the heap and stack sizes there.
                      14. Go to the Application/User folder. Double-click the main.c file and edit it.
                      15. The tutorial consists in creating and writing to a file on the evaluation board SD card
                               using the FatFs file system middleware:
                                     At startup all LEDs are OFF.
                               a)
                               b)
                                       The red LED is turned ON to indicate that an error occurred (FatFs initialization,
                                       file read/write access errors..).
                                       The orange LED is turned ON to indicate that the FatFs link has been successfully
                               C)
                                       mounted on the SD driver.
                                       The blue LED is turned ON to indicate that the file has been successfully written to
                               d)
                                       the SD Card.
                                       The green LED is turned ON to indicate that the file has been successfully read
                               e)
                                       from file the SD Card.
                      16. For use case implementation, update main.c with the following code:
                               a) Insert main.c private variables in a dedicated user code section:
                      /* USER CODE BEGIN PV */
                      /* Private variables -----*/
                      FATFS SDFatFs; /* File system object for SD card logical drive */
                                                 /* File object */
                      FIL MyFile;
                      const char wtext[] = "Hello World!";
                      const uint8_t image1_bmp[] = {
                      0 \\ x \\ 4 \\ 2, 0 \\ x \\ 4 \\ 0 \\ x \\ 3 \\ 6, 0 \\ x \\ 0 \\ 3, 0 \\ x \\ 0, 0 \\ x \\
                      0x18,0x00,0x00,0x00,0x00,0x00,0x00,0x84,0x03,0x00,0x00,0x00,0x00,0x00,
                      0x00,0x00,0x00,0x00,0x00,0x00,0x00,0x00,0x00,0x00,0x00,0x00,0x29,0x74,
                      0x51,0x0e,0x63,0x30,0x04,0x4c,0x1d,0x0f,0x56,0x25,0x11,0x79,0x41,0x1f,
                      0x85,0x6f,0x25,0x79,0x7e,0x27,0x72,0x72,0x0b,0x50,0x43,0x00,0x44,0x15,
                      0x00,0x4b,0x0f,0x00,0x4a,0x15,0x07,0x50,0x16,0x03,0x54,0x22,0x23,0x70,
                      0x65,0x30,0x82,0x6d,0x0f,0x6c,0x3e,0x22,0x80,0x5d,0x23,0x8b,0x5b,0x26};
                      /* USER CODE END PV */
                               b) Insert main functional local variables:
                      int main(void)
                          /* USER CODE BEGIN 1 */
                                                                                  /* FatFs function common result code */
                          FRESULT res;
                          uint32 t byteswritten, bytesread; /* File write/read counts */
                                                                                              /* File read buffer */
                          char rtext[256];
                           /* USER CODE END 1 */
                          /* MCU Configuration-----*/
                          /* Reset of all peripherals, Initializes the Flash interface and the
```

```
Systick. */
HAL Init();
```



Insert user code in the main function, after initialization calls and before the while C) loop, to perform actual read/write from/to the SD card:

```
int main(void)
      MX FATFS Init();
        /* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */
      /*##-0- Turn all LEDs off(red, green, orange and blue) */
        HAL GPIO WritePin(GPIOG, (GPIO PIN 10 | GPIO PIN 6 | GPIO PIN 7 |
      GPIO PIN 12), GPIO PIN SET);
      if(retSD == 0){
            /* success: set the orange LED on */
           HAL GPIO WritePin(GPIOG, GPIO PIN 7, GPIO PIN RESET);
      /*##-2- Register the file system object to the FatFs module ###*/
          if(f mount(&SDFatFs, (TCHAR const*)SD Path, 0) != FR OK){
           /* FatFs Initialization Error : set the red LED on */
             HAL GPIO WritePin(GPIOG, GPIO PIN 10, GPIO PIN RESET);
             while(1);
            } else
                      {
      /*##-3- Create a FAT file system (format) on the logical drive#*/
       /* WARNING: Formatting the uSD card will delete all content on the
      device */
       if(f_mkfs((TCHAR const*)SD_Path, 0, 0) != FR OK) {
          /* FatFs Format Error : set the red LED on */
         HAL GPIO WritePin(GPIOG, GPIO PIN 10, GPIO PIN RESET);
         while(1);
        } else {
      /*##-4- Create & Open a new text file object with write access#*/
        if(f open(&MyFile, "Hello.txt", FA CREATE ALWAYS | FA WRITE) !=
      FR OK) {
       /* 'Hello.txt' file Open for write Error : set the red LED on */
       HAL GPIO WritePin(GPIOG, GPIO PIN 10, GPIO PIN RESET);
       while(1);
           } else {
       res = f write(&MyFile, wtext, sizeof(wtext), (void
      *) & byteswritten);
        if((byteswritten == 0) || (res != FR OK)){
          /* 'Hello.txt' file Write or EOF Error : set the red LED on */
          HAL GPIO WritePin(GPIOG, GPIO PIN 10, GPIO PIN RESET);
         while(1);
          } else {
       /*##-6- Successful open/write : set the blue LED on */
         HAL GPIO WritePin(GPIOG, GPIO PIN 12, GPIO PIN RESET);
          f close(&MyFile);
       /*##-7- Open the text file object with read access #*/
         if(f open(&MyFile, "Hello.txt", FA READ) != FR OK) {
         /* 'Hello.txt' file Open for read Error : set the red LED on */
```

{

DocID025776 Rev 17



```
HAL_GPIO_WritePin(GPIOG, GPIO_PIN_10, GPIO_PIN_RESET);
       while(1);
        } else {
     /*##-8- Read data from the text file \#\#\#\#\#\#\#\#\#\#/
       res = f read(&MyFile, rtext, sizeof(wtext), &bytesread);
       if((strcmp(rtext,wtext)!=0)|| (res != FR_OK)){
      /* 'Hello.txt' file Read or EOF Error : set the red LED on */
       HAL GPIO WritePin(GPIOG, GPIO PIN 10, GPIO PIN RESET);
       while(1);
        } else {
      /* Successful read : set the green LED On */
        HAL_GPIO_WritePin(GPIOG, GPIO_PIN_6, GPIO_PIN_RESET);
     f close(&MyFile);
      }}}}}
     /*##-10- Unlink the micro SD disk I/O driver ###########/
       FATFS UnLinkDriver(SD Path);
      /* USER CODE END 2 */
      /* Infinite loop */
      /* USER CODE BEGIN WHILE */
while (1)
```



8 Tutorial 3 - Using the Power Consumption Calculator to optimize the embedded application consumption and more

8.1 **Tutorial overview**

This tutorial focuses on STM32CubeMX Power Consumption Calculator (Power Consumption Calculator) feature and its benefits to evaluate the impacts of power-saving techniques on a given application sequence.

The key considerations to reduce a given application power consumption are:

- Reducing the operating voltage
- Reducing the time spent in energy consuming modes

It is up to the developer to select a configuration that gives the best compromise between low-power consumption and performance.

- Maximizing the time spent in non-active and low-power modes
- Using the optimal clock configuration

The core should always operate at relatively good speed, since reducing the operating frequency can increase energy consumption if the microcontroller has to remain for a long time in an active operating mode to perform a given operation.

- Enabling only the peripherals relevant for the current application state and clock-gating the others
- When relevant, using the peripherals with low-power features (e.g. waking up the microcontroller with the I2C)
- Minimizing the number of state transitions
- Optimizing memory accesses during code execution
 - Prefer code execution from RAM to Flash memory
 - When relevant, consider aligning CPU frequency with Flash memory operating frequency for zero wait states.

The following tutorial shows how the STM32CubeMX Power Consumption Calculator feature can help to tune an application to minimize its power consumption and extend the battery life.

Note: The Power Consumption Calculator does not account for I/O dynamic current consumption and external board components that can also affect current consumption. For this purpose, an "additional consumption" field is provided for the user to specify such consumption value.



8.2 Application example description

The application is designed using the NUCLEO-L476RG board based on a STM32L476RGTx device and supplied by a 2.4 V battery.

The main purpose of this application is to perform ADC measurements and transfer the conversion results over UART. It uses:

- Multiple low-power modes: Low-power run, Low-power sleep, Sleep, Stop and Standby
- Multiple peripherals: USART, DMA, Timer, COMP, DAC and RTC
 - The RTC is used to run a calendar and to wake up the CPU from Standby when a specified time has elapsed.
 - The DMA transfers ADC measurements from ADC to memory
 - The USART is used in conjunction with the DMA to send/receive data via the virtual COM port and to wake up the CPU from Stop mode.

The process to optimize such complex application is to start describing first a functional only sequence then to introduce, on a step by step basis, the low-power features provided by the STM32L476RG microcontroller.

8.3 Using the Power Consumption Calculator

8.3.1 Creating a power sequence

Follow the steps below to create the sequence (see Figure 179):

- 1. Launch STM32CubeMX.
- 2. Click new project and select the Nucleo-L476RG board from the Board tab.
- 3. Click the **Power Consumption Calculator** tab to select the Power Consumption Calculator view. A first sequence is then created as a reference.
- 4. Adapt it to minimize the overall current consumption. To do this:
 - a) Select 2.4 V V_{DD} power supply. This value can be adjusted on a step by step basis (see *Figure 180*).
 - b) Select the Li-MnO2 (CR2032) battery. This step is optional. The battery type can be changed later on (see *Figure 180*).









Microcontroller Selecte	ed	۲
Series: Line: MCU: <u>Datasheet:</u>	STM32L4 STM32L4x6 STM32L476RGTx 025976_Rev3	
Parameter Selection		۲
Ambient Temperature (°C) Vdd Power Supply (V):	25 2.4	•
Battery Selection		۲
Select]	
Battery:	Li-MnO2(CR2032)	
In Series:		1
In Parallel:		1
Capacity:	225.0 mAh	
Self Discharge:	0.12 %/month	
Nominal Voltage:	6.0 V	
Max Cont Current:	3.0 mA	
Max Pulse Current:	15.0 mA	

Figure 180. V_{DD} and battery selection menu

- 5. Enable the **Transition checker** to ensure the sequence is valid (see *Figure 180*). This option allows verifying that the sequence respects the allowed transitions implemented within the STM32L476RG.
- 6. Click the Add button to add steps that match the sequence described in *Figure 180*.
 - By default the steps last 1 ms each, except for the wakeup transitions that are preset using the transition times specified in the product datasheet (see *Figure 181*).
 - Some peripherals for which consumption is unavailable or negligible are highlighted with '*' (see *Figure 181*).

Sequence	Table														
Step	Mode		Range/Scale	Memory	 Clock C	Src Freq	Periphe	Add. C	Step C	Duration	DMIPS	Voltag	Ta Max	Category	
1	RUN	2.4	Range 1-High	FLASH/A	 HSE	24.0 MHz	ADC1:fs	0 mA	9.36 mA	1 ms	30.0	Battery	103.99	Datasheet	
2	STANDBY	2.4	NoRange	n/a	 LSI RTC	37.0 kHz	RTC*	0 mA	0.46 µA	1 ms	0.0	Battery	105	Datasheet	
3	WU_FROM_ST	2.4	NoRange	n/a	 MSI FAST	4.0 MHz		0 mA	1.7 mA	20.1 µs	0.0	Battery	104.82	Datasheet	
4	RUN	2.4	Range1-High	FLASH/A	 HSE	16.0 MHz	RTC	0 mA	2.16 mA	1 ms	20.0	Battery	104.77	Datasheet	
5	RUN	2.4	Range2-Medium	FLASH/A	 HSE	16.0 MHz	ADC1:fs	0 mA	1.92 mA	1 ms	20.0	Battery	104.79	Datasheet	
6	SLEEP	2.4	Range2-Medium	ON	 HSE	16.0 MHz	ADC1:fs	0 mA	703.2 µA	1 ms	0.0	Battery	104.92	Datasheet	≡
7	RUN	2.4	Range2-Medium	FLASH/A	 HSE	16.0 MHz	DMA1R	0 mA	1.92 mA	1 ms	20.0	Battery	104.79	Datasheet	
8	STOP1	2.4	NoRange	n/a	 ALL CLO	0 Hz	USART1*	0 mA	6.65 µA	1 ms	0.0	Battery	105	In DS Ta	1
9	WU_FROM_ST	2.4	NoRange	n/a	 HSI16	16.0 MHz		0 mA	1.62 mA	6.3 µs	0.0	Battery	104.83	Datasheet	
10	RUN	2.4	Range2-Medium	FLASH/A	 HSE	16.0 MHz	RTC USA	0 mA	1.89 mA	1 ms	20.0	Battery	104.8	Datasheet	
11	STANDBY	2.4	NoRange	n/a	 LSI RTC	37.0 kHz	RTC*	0 mA	0.46 µA	1 ms	0.0	Battery	105	Datasheet	+

Figure 181. Sequence table



DocID025776 Rev 17

7. Click the **Save** button to save the sequence as SequenceOne.

The application consumption profile is the generated. It shows that the overall sequence consumes an average of 2.01 mA for 9 ms, and the battery lifetime is only 4 days (see *Figure 182*).



Figure 182. sequence results before optimization

8.3.2 Optimizing application power consumption

Let us now take several actions to optimize the overall consumption and the battery lifetime. These actions are performed on step 1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 10.

The next figures show on the left the original step and on the right the step updated with several optimization actions.

Step 1 (Run)

Findings

All peripherals are enabled although the application requires only the RTC.

- Actions
 - Lower the operating frequency.
 - Enable solely the RTC peripheral.
 - To reduce the average current consumption, reduce the time spent in this mode.
- Results

The current is reduced from 9.05 mA to 2.16 mA (see Figure 183).



UM1718 Tutorial 3 - Using the Power Consumption Calculator to optimize the embedded applica-

		Figure 165. Step	Ji optimiza	lion	
Edit Step		×	Edit Step		×
😔 🛷 🔕 🔰			😔 🛷 😒 🔰		
Power/Memory		Peripherals ^	Power/Memory		LPUARI1
Power Mode:	RUN 👻		Power Mode:	RUN 👻	OPAMP1
Power Range:	Range 1-High 🔹	• ADC2	Power Range:	Range 1-High 🔹	Normal
Memory Fetch Type:	FLASH/ART/Cache 🔹	AHB_APB1_Bridge	Memory Fetch Type:	FLASH/ART/Cache 🔹	OPAMP2
Vdd:	2.4 🗸	🔽 AHB_APB2_Bridge	Vdd:	2.4 🔹	Cow_Power
Voltage Source:	Battery 👻	CAN1	Voltage Source:	Battery 👻	PVD/BOR
L		B DAC1			PWR
Clocks		V DFSDM	Clocks		QUADSPI
CPU Frequency:	24.0 MHz 🔹	- V DMA1	CPU Frequency:	16.0 MHz 🔹	
Interpolation ranges		V DMA2	Interpolation ranges		SAI1
User choice (Hz):			User choice (Hz):		SAI2
Clock Configuration:	HSE 👻	GPIOB	Clock Configuration:	HSE	SPI1
Clock Source Frequency:	24.0 MHz -	GPIOC	Clock Source Frequency:	16.0 MHz -	
L		— 🔽 GPIOH			SPI3
Optional Settings		🔽 I2C1	Optional Settings		SWPPIII
Step Duration:	1 ms 🔻	₩ 12C2	Step Duration:	0.1 ms 🗸	SYS-VREFBUF/COMP1
Additional Consumption:	0 (mA 👻		Additional Consumption:	0 [mA 👻	TIM1
		• LCD			TIM2
- Results		- 🔽 LPTIM1	- Kesuits		1143
Step Consumption: 9.0	5 mA	V LPTIM2	Step Consumption: 2.1	6 mA	
Without Peripherals: 3.18	8 mA	P OPAMP1	Without Peripherals: 2.16	6 mA	- TIM6
Peripherals Part: 5.8	7 mA (A: 296.25 µA - D: 5.57 mA)	Low_Power	Peripherals Part: 0 µ/	A (A: 0 μA - D: 0 μA)	TIM7
Ta Max (°C): 104	4.02	Normal -	Ta Max (°C): 104	.77	TIM8
Warnings		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	-Warnings		
The step consumption is current (3 mA) of the batt	higher than the max continuous tery selection.		er en i migo		
		OK Cancel			OK Cancel

Figure 183. Step 1 optimization

Step 4 (Run, RTC)

 Action: Reduce the time spent in this mode to 0.1 ms.



Step 5 (Run, ADC, DMA, RTC)

- Actions
 - Change to Low-power run mode.
 - Lower the operating frequency.
- Results

The current consumption is reduced from 6.17 mA to 271 µA (see Figure 184).

		V 1			
Edit Step			Edit Step		×
😔 📝 😣 🔪			😔 🗹 🛛 🔪		
Power/Memory			Power/Memory		OUI1-Butter_ON-Middle_c
Power Mode:	RUN 👻	FW	Power Mode:	LOWPOWER RUN	OUT1-Buffer_ON-Worst_cc
Power Range:	Range 1-High		Dames Damas	NeD-see	OUT2-Buffer_OFF-Middle_(
			Power Range:	Norange	OUT2-Buffer_ON-Middle_o
Memory Fetch Type:	FLASH/ART/Cache 👻	GPIOD	Memory Fetch Type:	FLASH/ART/Cache 🔹	
Vdd:	2.4 👻	📝 GPIOH	Vdd:	2.4 🔹	DMA1
Voltage Source:	Battery 👻	— 📝 I2C1	Voltage Source:	Battery 🗸	
L		····· 📝 I2C2			FLASH E
Clocks		····· V 12C3	Clocks		🖻 FW
CPU Frequency:	16.0 MHz 👻	INDG	CPU Frequency:	2.0 MHz	GPIOA
Interpolation ranges			Totomalation same		GPIOB
		E LPTIM2	Interpolation ranges	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	GPIOC
User choice (Hz):			User choice (Hz):		GPIOH
Clock Configuration:	HSE	OPAMP1	Clock Configuration:	MSI	
Clock Source Frequency:	16.0 MHz 👻	+ OPAMP2	Clock Source Frequency:	2.0 MHz 🗸	🔲 12C2
L		PVD/BOR			🔲 12C3
Optional Settings			Optional Settings		IWDG
Step Duration:	1 ms 👻	QUADSPI	Step Duration:	1 ms 👻	LCD
Additional Consumption:	0 mA 🔻	₩ RTC	Additional Consumption:	0	Booster_OFF
			Additional Consumption.		
-Results		📝 5AI2	Results		
Step Consumption: 6.17	7 mA	🔽 SDMMC1	Step Copp motion 2	74	DUART1
		📝 SPI1	Step Consumption: 21	Тра	OPAMP1
without Peripherals: 2.16	5 MA	SPI2	Without Peripherals: 27	71 µA	Low_Power
Peripherals Part: 4.01	1 mA (A: 296.25 µA - D: 3.72 mA)	V 5P13	Peripherals Part: 0	μΑ (A: 0 μΑ - D: 0 μΑ)	In Normal
Ta Max (°C): 104.	.33	SVFFIL	Ta Max (°C): 10	14.97	0PAMP2
-Warnings		↓	Wanisas		
The step consumption is I	higher than the max continuous		warnings		
current (3 mA) of the batte	ery selection.				
		OK Cancel			OK Cancel

Figure 184. Step 5 optimization



Step 6 (Sleep, DMA, ADC, RTC)

- Actions
 - Switch to Lower-power sleep mode (BAM mode)
 - Reduce the operating frequency to 2 MHz.
- Results

The current consumption is reduced from 703 µA to 93 µA (see Figure 185).

		U I	•		
Edit Step			Edit Step		
😔 🛷 🔕 🔰			😔 🛷 🔕 🔰		
Power/Memory			-Power/Memory		
Power Mode:	SLEEP 👻	DAC1	Power Mode:	LOWPOWER_SLEEP	
Power Range:	Range2-Medium 👻	DFSDM	Power Range:	NoRange	fs 10 ksps
Elach Statue:		DMA1	Flach Status:		fs_1_Msps
indan Status.		DMA2	indan Status.		<mark>∏ fs_5_Msps</mark> ≡
Vdd:	2.4	E FLASH	Vdd:	2.4	AHB_APB1_Bridge
Voltage Source:	Battery 👻	FW	Voltage Source:	Battery 👻	AHB_APB2_Bridge
		GPIOA	L		Bus-Matrix
Clocks		GPIOB	Clocks		
Bus Frequency:	16.0 MHz 🗸	- GPIOD	Bus Frequency:	2.0 MHz 🔹	DAC1
Interpolation ranges	~	— 🗍 GPIOH	Interpolation ranges		OUT1+OUT2-Buffer_OFF-M
User choice (Hz):			User choice (Hz):		OUT1+0UT2-Buffer_ON-Mi
					OUT1+OUT2-Buffer_ON-W
Clock Configuration:	HSE 👻	12C3	Clock Configuration:	MSI 👻	OUT1-Buffer_OFF-Middle_(
Clock Source Frequency:	16.0 MHz 👻	IWDG	Clock Source Frequency:	2.0 MHz 👻	OUT1-Buffer_ON-Middle_o
		LCD			OUT1-Buffer_ON-Worst_co
Optional Settings			Optional Settings		OUT2-Buffer_ON-Middle_o
Step Duration:	1 ms 👻	LPUART1	Step Duration:	1 ms 👻	OUT2-Buffer_ON-Worst_cc
Additional Consumption:	0 (mA 👻	OPAMP1	Additional Consumption:	0 mA 👻	DFSDM
		OPAMP2			🕅 DMA1
-Results		PVD/BOR	Results		DMA2
Step Consumption: 70	3.2 µA	PWR	Step Consumption: 93	.4 μA	FLASH
Without Peripherals: 589	A NA	QUADSPI	Without Peripherals: 93.	4uA	E CRIOA
Parisharala Parta 114	4 2 A 16 6 D 07 6 A	RTC	Doriphorale Darts 0.0	A (A) 0.04 Di 0.04	
relipherals rate 114	4.2 μA (A: 16.6 μA - D: 97.6 μA)	SAI1	Periprierais Part. 0 p	а (A: 0 ра - D: 0 ра)	GPIOC
Ta Max (°C): 104	4.92		Ta Max (*C): 104	4.99	1 m +
- Warnings			Warnings		
		OK Cancel			OK Cancel
		J			

Figure 185. Step 6 optimization



Step 7 (Run, DMA, RTC, USART)

- Actions
 - Switch to Lower-power run mode.
 - Use the power-efficient LPUART peripheral.
 - Reduce the operating frequency to 1 MHz using the interpolation feature.
- Results

The current consumption is reduced from 1.92 μ A to 42 μ A (see *Figure 186*).

Edit Sten		×	Edit Sten		X
-Power/Memory			-Power/Memory		UFSUM
n and a		RNG			DMA1
Power Mode:	RUN ¥		Power Mode:	LOWPOWER_RUN -	🔲 DMA2
Power Range:	Range2-Medium 👻		Power Range:	NoRange 👻	- FLASH
Memory Fetch Type:	FLASH/ART/Cache 🗸	SDMMC1	Memory Fetch Type:	FLASH/ART/Cache 👻	🗖 FW
Vdd-	24	- SPI1	Vdd:	2.4	GPIOA
vuu.			vuu.		GPIOB
Voltage Source:	Battery	SPI3	Voltage Source:	Battery	GPIOC
		SWPMI1			GPIOD
Clocks		SYS-VREFBUF/COMP1	Clocks		
CPU Frequency:	16.0 MHz 👻		CPU Frequency:	User-defined 🗸 🗸	- I2C2
Interpolation ranges		TIM1	Interpolation ranges	100.0 kHz 2.0 MHz 👻	
User choice (Hz):		TIM2	User choice (Hz):	100000	🔲 IWDG
Clock Configuration:	HCE	— TIM4	Clock Configuration:		
Clock Conliguration:	noc •	- 🗖 TIM5	Clock Conliguration:	MD1	Booster_OFF
Clock Source Frequency:	16.0 MHz 👻	— 🔲 ТІМ6	Clock Source Frequency:	100.0 kHz 👻	Booster_ON
		🕅 TIM7			
Optional Settings		- TIM8	Optional Settings		
Step Duration:	1 ms 👻	— TIM15	Step Duration:	1 ms 👻	OPAMP1
Additional Consumption:	0 mA 👻	TIM16	Additional Consumption:	0 mA 👻	Low_Power
					🔲 Normal
Results			Results		OPAMP2
Step Consumption: 1.92	mA		Step Consumption: 42.0)6 µА	Low_Power
Without Peripherals: 1.81 n	mΔ	UART5	Without Peripherals: 41.8	114	Normal
		USART1			PVD/BOR
Peripherals Part: 105.6	5 µА (А: 0 µА - D: 105.6 µА)	USART2	Peripherals Part: 0.26	μΑ (Α: 0 μΑ - D: 0.26 μΑ)	
Ta Max (°C): 104.7	79	USART3 -	Ta Max (°C): 105		
- Warnings			- Warnings		
			-		
		OK Cancel			OK Cancel

Figure 186. Step 7 optimization



Step 8 (Stop 0, USART)

- Actions:
 - Switch to Stop1 low-power mode.
 - Use the power-efficient LPUART peripheral.
- Results

The current consumption is reduced from 110 μ A to 6.65 μ A (see *Figure 187*).

Figure	187.	Step	8 o	ptimization
		p	•••	

Power/Memory					COMP_mgn_speed-st		Power/Memory			Perir	herals	-
Power/Memory	r			🔲	COMP_High_Speed-St		- Fower / Method y	r			- DAC1	ľ
Power Mode:	STOP0	•		🔳	COMP_High_Speed-St		Power Mode:	STOP1			- OUT1+OUT2-Buffe	r O
Power Range:	NoRange	•			COMP_Medium_Powe		Power Range:	NoRange	•		OUT1+OUT2-Buffe	r 0
Memory Fetch Type:	n/a	•		🔳	COMP_Medium_Powe		Memory Fetch Type:	n/a	•		- OUT1-Buffer_ON-M	lidd
Vdd:	2.4	-			COMP_Medium_Powe		Vdd:	2.4	•		OUT1-Buffer_ON-W	lors
Voltage Sources	Pattory				COMP_Medium_Powe	ш	Voltage Source:	Battery			OUT2-Buffer_ON-M	lidd
voitage source.	Dattery	• J			COMP_Medium_Powe		vorage boarce.	buttery			OUT2-Buffer_ON-W	lor
Clocks			_		COMP_Medium_Powe		Clocks			[GPIOA*	
CDU Franciscu	0.44				COMP_Medium_Powe		CPU Froguency	0.87			GPIOB*	
CPO Frequency:		•		🗖	COMP OFF VRFFBUF		cronrequency.	0112			GPIOC*	
Interpolation ranges		V			COMP OFF VREFBUF		Interpolation ranges		Ψ		GPIOD*	
User choice (Hz):				🗖	COMP_OFF_VREFBUF_		User choice (Hz):				1201*	
Clock Configuration:	ALL CLOCKS OFF	•		🔳	COMP_Ultra_Low_Pov		Clock Configuration:	ALL CLOCKS OFF	•] 12C2*	
Clock Source Frequency:	0 Hz	•			COMP_Ultra_Low_Pov		Clock Source Frequency:	0 Hz	•		12C3*	
					COMP_Ultra_Low_Pov			¢			IWDG	
Optional Settings				🔳	COMP_Ultra_Low_Pov		-Optional Settings				LCD*	
Step Duration:	1	ms 👻		🔳	COMP_Ultra_Low_Pov	ш	Step Duration:	1	ms 👻	[LPTIM1*	
	-	[COMP_Ultra_Low_Pov		Additional Consumptions	-	[LPTIM2*	
Additional Consumption:	U	ma 🔸			COMP_Ultra_Low_Pov		Additional Consumption:	U	IIIA ▼		LPUART1*	
Paguite			_		274*		Results				- OPAMP1	
Results				UAA	₹75* =						Low_Power	
Step Consumption: 110	Aμ			T USA	IRT1*		Step Consumption: 0.6	рна				
Without Peripherals: 110	μA			USA	IRT2*		Without Peripherals: 6.65	μA			- Dow Power	
Peripherals Part: 0 µA	(A: 0 μA - D: 0 μA)			USA	IRT3*		Peripherals Part: 0 µA	(A: 0 μA - D: 0 μA)			- Normal	
Ta Max (°C): 104	.99		E	USE	_OTG_FS* -		Ta Max (°C): 105			····· [PVD/BOR	
			•	III	Þ					•	III	•
Warnings							warnings					
				_	OK Cancel	J					OK Can	cel



Step 10 (RTC, USART)

- Actions
 - Use the power-efficient LPUART peripheral.
 - Reduce the operating frequency to 1 MHz.
- Results
 - The current consumption is reduced from 1.89 mA to 234 μ A (see *Figure 188*).

The example given in *Figure 189* shows an average current consumption reduction of 155 μ A.

Edit Step		X	Edit Step		x
Power/Memory		COMP_OFF_VREFBUF_ON_I ^	Power/Memory		GPIOB ^
Power Mode:	RUN 👻	COMP_Ultra_Low_Power-S	Power Mode:	RUN	GPIOC
Power Range:	Range2-Medium 👻	COMP_Ultra_Low_Power-S	Power Range:	Range2-Medium 👻	GPIOD
Memory Fetch Type:	FLASH/ART/Cache 🔹	COMP_Ultra_Low_Power-S	Memory Fetch Type:	FLASH/ART/Cache 🔹	
Vdd:	2.4 👻	COMP_Ultra_Low_Power-S	Vdd:	2.4 🗸	12C2
Voltage Source:	Battery 🗸	COMP_Ultra_Low_Power-S	Voltage Source:	Battery -	
		COMP_UItra_Low_Power-S	-		
Clocks		- TIM1	Clocks		Booster_OFF
CPU Frequency:	16.0 MHz 🔹	TIM2	CPU Frequency:	1.0 MHz 🔹	Booster_ON
Interpolation ranges	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		Interpolation ranges	· · · · ·	
User choice (Hz):			User choice (Hz):		U LPUART1
Clock Configuration:	HSE	🔲 TIM6	Clock Configuration:	HSE	OPAMP1
Clock Source Frequency:	16.0 MHz -		Clock Source Frequency:	1.0 MHz -	Low_Power
					OPAMP2
Optional Settings		- TIM16	Optional Settings		Low_Power
Step Duration:	1 ms 👻	- 🔲 TIM17	Step Duration:	1 ms 👻	Normal
Additional Consumption:	0 mA 🔻	TS	Additional Consumption:	0 mA 🔻	PVD/BOR
					QUADSPI
Results		🖸 UART5	Results		🗖 RNG
Step Consumption: 1.89) mA	USART1	Step Consumption: 234	1.2 μA	RTC
Without Peripherals: 1.81	mA		Without Peripherals: 232	μΑ	SAII
Peripherals Part: 84.8	μΑ (A: 0 μΑ - D: 84.8 μΑ)	USB_OTG_FS	Peripherals Part: 2.2	μΑ (Α: 0 μΑ - D: 2.2 μΑ)	
Ta Max (°C): 104.	8	wwDg 👻	Ta Max (°C): 104	.97	SPI1
Warnings		4	L √Warnings		
			-		
		OK Cancel			OK Cancel
L					

Figure 188. Step 10 optimization



See *Figure 189* for the sequence overall results: 7 ms duration, about 2 month battery life, and an average current consumption of $165.25 \,\mu$ A.

Use the **compare** button to compare the current results to the original ones saved as SequenceOne.pcs.







9 Tutorial 4 - Example of UART communications with a STM32L053xx Nucleo board

This tutorial aims at demonstrating how to use STM32CubeMX to create a UART serial communication application for a NUCLEO-L053R8 board.

A Windows PC is required for the example. The ST-Link USB connector is used both for serial data communications, and firmware downloading and debugging on the MCU. A Type-A to mini-B USB cable must be connected between the board and the computer. The USART2 peripheral uses PA2 and PA3 pins, which are wired to the ST-Link connector. In addition, USART2 is selected to communicate with the PC via the ST-Link Virtual COM Port. A serial communication client, such as Tera Term, needs to be installed on the PC to display the messages received from the board over the virtual communication Port.

9.1 Tutorial overview

Tutorial 4 will take you through the following steps:

- 1. Selection of the NUCLEO-L053R8 board from the **New Project** menu.
- 2. Selection of the required features (debug, USART, timer) from the **Pinout** view: peripheral operating modes as well as assignment of relevant signals on pins.
- 3. Configuration of the MCU clock tree from the Clock Configuration view.
- 4. Configuration of the peripheral parameters from the **Configuration** view
- 5. Configuration of the project settings in the Project Settings menu and generation of the project (initialization code only).
- 6. Project update with the user application code corresponding to the UART communication example.
- 7. Compilation, and execution of the project on the board.
- 8. Configuration of Tera Term software as serial communication client on the PC.
- 9. The results are displayed on the PC.

9.2 Creating a new STM32CubeMX project and selecting the Nucleo board

To do this, follow the sequence below:

- 1. Select **File > New project** from the main menu bar. This opens the **New Project** window.
- 2. Go to the Board selector tab and filter on L0 series.
- 3. Select NUCLEO-L053R8 and click OK to load the board within the STM32CubeMX user interface (see *Figure 190*).



CU Selector Board Selector								
loard Filter	-							
Vendor :		Type of	Boar	d :	MCLI Series :			
CTMissaelesbasies		Type of board :			ctwork o			
SIMICroelectronics	•	All		•	STMSZLU	•		
Initialize all IP with their de	fault M	ode						>>
Peripherals/Connectors Select	tion			Boards List: 6 Iter	ns			
Peripherals/Connectors	Nb	Max		Туре	Reference		MCU	
Accelerometer		N/A		Nucleo32	NUCLEO-L03	1K6	STM32L031K6Tx	
Analog I/O	0	0		Nucleo32	NUCLEO-L01	1K4	STM32L011K4Tx	
Audio Line In		N/A		Nucleo64	NUCLEO-L05	3R8	STM32L053R8Tx	
Audio Line Out		N/A		Nucleo64	NUCLEO-L07	3RZ	STM32L073RZTx	
Button	0	1	1	Discovery	STM32L0538	DISCOVERY	STM32L053C8Tx	
CAN	0	0		EvalBoard	STM32L073Z	-EVAL	STM32L073VZTx	
Camera		N/A	1				I	
Compass		N/A	1					
Digital I/O	0	76	1					
Eeprom		N/A	1					
Ethernet		N/A						
Flash Memory	0	0						
Gyroscope		N/A	1					
🕘 IrDA		N/A	1					
Joystick		N/A						
Lcd Display (Graphics)		N/A						
Lcd Display (Segemnt)		N/A						
Led	0	4						
Light Sensor		N/A						
Memory Card		N/A						
Microphone	0	0						
Potentiometer		N/A						
Pressure Sensor		N/A						
RS-232	0	1						
RS-485		N/A						
SRAM/SDRAM	0	0	Ŧ					

Figure 190. Selecting NUCLEO_L053R8 board



9.3 Selecting the features from the Pinout view

1. Select Debug Serial Wire under SYS (see *Figure 191*).





2. Select Internal Clock as clock source under TIM2 peripheral (see Figure 192).

Figure 192. Selecting TIM2 clock source



DocID025776 Rev 17



3. Select the Asynchronous mode for the USART2 peripheral (see *Figure 193*).



Figure 193. Selecting asynchronous mode for USART2

- 4. Check that the signals are properly assigned on pins (see *Figure 194*):
 - SYS_SWDIO on PA13
 - TCK on PA14
 - USART_TX on PA2
 - USART_RX on PA3







9.4 Configuring the MCU clock tree from the Clock Configuration view

1. Go to the **Clock Configuration** tab and leave the configuration untouched, in order to use the MSI as input clock and an HCLK of 2.097 MHz (see *Figure 195*).



Figure 195. Configuring the MCU clock tree





9.5 Configuring the peripheral parameters from the Configuration view

- 1. From the **Configuration** tab, click USART2 to open the peripheral **Parameter Settings** window and set the baudrate to 9600. Make sure the Data direction is set to "Receive and Transmit" (see *Figure 196*).
- 2. Click OK to apply the changes and close the window.

Figure	196.	Configuring	USART2	parameters
--------	------	-------------	---------------	------------

Basic Parameters	
Baud Rate	9600 Bits/s
Word Length	8 Bits (including Parity)
Parity	None
Stop Bits	1
Advanced Parameters	
Data Direction	Receive and Transmit
Over Sampling	16 Samples
Single Sample	Disable
Advanced Features	
Auto Baudrate	Disable
TX Pin Active Level Inversion	Disable
RX Pin Active Level Inversion	Disable
Data Inversion	Disable
TX and RX Pins Swapping	Disable
Overrun	Enable
DMA on RX Error	Enable
MSB First	Disable



3. Click TIM2 and change the prescaler to 16000, the Word Length to 8 bits and the Counter Period to 1000 (see *Figure 197*).

TIM2 Configuration	X
🖋 Parameter Settings 🗹 User Constants 🔣 NVIC Sett	ings 🦪 DMA Settings
Configure the below parameters :	
Search : Search (Crtl+F)	
Counter Settings	
Prescaler (PSC - 16 bits value)	16000
Counter Mode	Up
Counter Period (AutoReload Register - 16 bits valu	. 1000
Internal Clock Division (CKD)	No Division
Trigger Output (TRGO) Parameters	
Master/Slave Mode	Disable (no sync between this TIM (Master) and its Slaves
Trigger Event Selection	Reset (UG bit from TIMx_EGR)
Counter Period (AutoReload Register - 16 bits value)
Period must be between 0 and 65 535 .	,

Figure 197. Configuring TIM2 parameters



4. Enable TIM2 global interrupt from the **NVIC Settings** tab (see *Figure 198*).

TIM2 Configuration		x
Parameter Settings 🖉 User Constants 💎 NVIC Settings	ntering Settings	
Interrupt Table	Enabled	Preemption Priority
TIM2 global interrupt		0
	<i>۴</i>	

Figure 198. Enabling TIM2 interrupt



9.6 Configuring the project settings and generating the project

1. In the **Project Settings** menu, specify the project name, destination folder, and select the EWARM IDE toolchain (see *Figure 199*).

Project Name	
Nucleo_L073_UART_Comr	n
Project Location	
C:\STM32CubeMX_Project	ts\Tutoriel
Taalahain Faldas Lasakian	
C:\STM32CubeMX_Project	ts\Tutoriel\Nucleo 1.073 11ART. Comm
Toolchain / IDE	
EWARM	
Minimum Heap Size Minimum Stack Size	0x200 0x400
Mcu and Firmware Package	2
Mcu Reference	
STM32L073RZTx	
Firmulara Dadvaga Namo a	nd Version
Firmware Package Name a	0
STM32Cube FW_L0 V1.7.	
STM32Cube FW_L0 V1.7.	

Figure 199. Project Settings menu

If the Firmware package version is not already available on the user PC, a progress window opens to show the firmware package download progress.


2. In the **Code Generator** tab, configure the code to be generated as shown in *Figure 200*, and click **OK** to generate the code.

Project Settings		×
Project Code Genera	ator Advanced Settings	
STM32Cube Firmwa	ire Library Package	
Copy all used li	braries into the project folder	
Copy only the	necessary library files	
Add necessary	library files as reference in the toolchain project configuration file	
Generated files		
🔲 Generate perip	heral initialization as a pair of '.c/.h' files per peripherals	
Backup previou	usly generated files when re-generating	
V Keep User Cod	e when re-generating	
Delete previou	sly generated files when not re-generated	
HAL Settings		
Set all free pin	s as analog (to optimize the power consumption)	
Enable Full Ass	ert	
Template Settings		
Select a template t	o generate customized code Setting	gs
	Ok	Cancel

9.7 Updating the project with the user application code

Add the user code as follows:

```
/* USER CODE BEGIN 0 */
#include "stdio.h"
#include "string.h"
/* Buffer used for transmission and number of transmissions */
char aTxBuffer[1024];
int nbtime=1;
/* USER CODE END 0 */
```



Within the main function, start the timer event generation function as follows:

```
/* USER CODE BEGIN 2 */
/* Start Timer event generation */
HAL_TIM_Base_Start_IT(&htim2);
/* USER CODE END 2 */
/* USER CODE BEGIN 4 */
void HAL_TIM_PeriodElapsedCallback(TIM_HandleTypeDef *htim){
sprintf(aTxBuffer,"STM32CubeMX rocks %d times \t", ++nbtime);
HAL_UART_Transmit(&huart2,(uint8_t *) aTxBuffer, strlen(aTxBuffer), 5000);
}
/* USER CODE END 4 */
```

9.8 Compiling and running the project

- 1. Compile the project within your favorite IDE.
- 2. Download it to the board.
- 3. Run the program.

9.9 Configuring Tera Term software as serial communication client on the PC

1. On the computer, check the virtual communication port used by ST Microelectronics from the Device Manager window (see *Figure 201*).

Figure 201. Checking the communication port



DocID025776 Rev 17

218/261



UM1718 Tutorial 4 - Example of UART communications with a STM32L053xx Nucleo board

2. To configure Tera Term to listen to the relevant virtual communication port, adjust the parameters to match the USART2 parameter configuration on the MCU (see *Figure 202*).

Port:	COM17 -	ок
<u>B</u> aud rate:	9600 -	
<u>D</u> ata:	8 bit 👻	Cancel
P <u>a</u> rity:	none 🔻	
<u>S</u> top:	1 bit 🔹	<u>H</u> elp
Elow control:	none 🔹	
Transmit delay	y ; <u> c</u> har 0 msec/∐i	ine

Figure 202. Setting Tera Term port parameters

3. The Tera Term window displays a message coming from the board at a period of a few seconds (see *Figure 203*).

🚇 COM17 - Tera Term VT	
<u>File Edit Setup Control Window</u>	<u>H</u> elp
STM32CubeMX rocks 6 times s 8 times STM32CubeMX STM32CubeMX rocks 11 times	STM32CubeMX rocks 7 times rocks 9 times STM32CubeMX STM32CubeMX rocks 12 times

Figure 203. Setting Tera Term port parameters



10 Tutorial 5: exporting current project configuration to a compatible MCU

When **List pinout compatible MCUs** is selected from the **Pinout** menu, STM32CubeMX retrieves the list of the MCUs which are compatible with the current project configuration, and offers to export the current configuration to the newly selected compatible MCU.

This tutorial shows how to display the list of compatible MCUs and export your current project configuration to a compatible MCU:

1. Load an existing project, or create and save a new project:

STM32CubeMX Test.ioc: STM32F031F6Px
File Project Pinout Window Help
🗈 📭 🖬 🖬 🖏 🧶 💁
Pinout Clock Configuration Configuration Power Consumption Calculator
MiddeWares
B • FATTS
B • FREERTOS
e Peripherals
DC Disable
RTIM PAIS
B • IWDG = PT
High Speed Clock (HSE) BYPASS Cloc V
Activate Clock Source PPAL PPAL PPAL PPAL PPAL PPAL
Activate Calendar
- Internal Alarm A
Tamper 2
🕀 🖲 SPI1
₽ 💿 sys
B • TIM1
₽ • TIM2

Figure 204. Existing or new project pinout

2. Go to the **Pinout** menu and select **List Pinout Compatible MCUs**. The **Pinout compatible** window pops up (see *Figure 205* and *Figure 206*).

DocID025776 Rev 17

If needed, modify the search criteria and the filter options and restart the search process by clicking the **Search** button.

The row color shading and the *Comments* column indicate the level of matching:

- Bright green indicates an exact match: the MCU is fully compatible with the current project (see *Figure 205* for an example).
- Light green indicates a partial match with hardware compatibility: the hardware compatibility can be ensured but some pin names could not be preserved. Hover the mouse over the desired MCU to display an explanatory tooltip (see *Figure 206* for an example).



 Yellow indicates a partial match without hardware compatibility: not all signals can be assigned to the exact same pin location and a remapping will be required. Hover the mouse over the desired MCU to display an explanatory tooltip (see *Figure 206* for an example).

Figure 205	List of pinout compatible MCUs	- partial	match
	with hardware compatibility		

MCUs Filters	MCUs List: 105 Iter	ns					
Series :	MCU	Package	Flash	Ram	Signals to remap	Comments	E
STM32F0 V	STM32F072CBUx	UFOFPN48	128	16	0	HW compatible	
Packages :	STM32F048C6Ux	UFQFPN48	32	6	0	HW compatible	
All 🔻	USART1 RX at t	he came Pos	ition nin	(13) Din	lame changes from	PA10 to PB7	
	STHIST OFFICEOR	or grine ros	250		vanie changes nom	in compande	
Search Options	STM32F091CBTx	LQFP48	128	32	0	HW compatible	
Ignore Pinning Status	STM32F091CCTx	LQFP48	256	32	0	HW compatible	
Janore Power Pins	STM32F051C4Ux	UFQFPN48	16	8	0	HW compatible	
gildre i ower i ins	STM32F042C6Ux	UFQFPN48	32	6	0	HW compatible	
Ignore System Pins	STM32F098CCUx	UFQFPN48	256	32	0	HW compatible	
	STM32F098CCTx	LQFP48	256	32	0	HW compatible	
Search	STM32F051C6Ux	UFQFPN48	32	8	0	HW compatible	
(STM32F038C6Tx	LQFP48	32	4	0	HW compatible	
	STM32F030C8Tx	LQFP48	64	8	0	HW compatible	
	STM32E058C8UV	LIEOEPNIA8	64	g	0	HW. compatible	



MCUs Filters	MCUs List: 6 Items	3					
Series :	MCU	Package	Flash	Ram	Signals to remap	Comments	T,
All 🔻	STM32F030F4Px	TSSOP20	16	4	0	Full Compatible	
ackages :	STM32F031F4Px	TSSOP20	16	4	0	Full Compatible	
TSSOP20 🔻	STM32F038F6Px	TSSOP20	32	4	0	Full Compatible	
	STM32F042F6Px	TSSOP20	32	6	2	Need HW change	
Search Options	STM32F070F6Px	TSSOP20	32	6	2	Need HW change	
Ignore Pinning Status	STM32F042F4Px	TSSOP20	16	6	2	Need HW change	
Ignore Power Pins							
🗸 Ignore System Pins							
Search							
							-



3.

Then, select an MCU to import the current configuration to, and click **OK**, **Import**:

MCOS FILIEIS	MCUs List: 6 Items	3					
Series :	MCU	Package	Flash	Ram	Signals to remap	Comments	[₽
All	STM32F030F4Px	TSSOP20	16	4	0	Full Compatible	
Packages :	STM32F031F4Px	TSSOP20				Full Compatible	D
TSSOP20 🔻	STM32F03	Nersee	D-			Full Compatible	\sim
	STM32F04 INO PIN	Name chan	ge, no Po	sition cha	ange	Need HW change	
Search Options	STM32F070F6Px	TSSOP20	32	6	2	Need HW change	
Ignore Pinning Status	STM32F042F4Px	TSSOP20	16	6	2	Need HW change	
✓ Ianore Power Pins							
Internet Conternet Direct							
Ignore System Pins							
Search							

Figure 207. Selecting a compatible MCU and importing the configuration

The configuration is now available for the selected MCU:



STM32CubeMX Unt	titled*: STM32F031	F4Px				X
File Project Pinout W	/indow Help					
🖪 🐸 🖷 🖯 🖏 🤞	<u>s</u>					
Pinout Clock Configurati	on Configuration P	ower Consumption	Calculator			
Configuration MiddleWares FatFs Peripherals CRC CRC CRC CRC CRC CRC CRC CR	Compatible MCUs		RCC_OSC_ USART1_ USART1_	BOO PF0 PF1 NRST VDDA PA0 PA1 TX PA2 PA4	PA14 PA13 PA10 PA9 VDD VSS P81 PA7 PA6 PA5	
MCU	Package	Flash	Ram	Signals to remap	Comments	E
STM32F030F4Px	TSSOP20	16	4	0	Full Compatible	
STM32F031F4Px	TSSOP20	16	4	0	Full Compatible	
STM32F038F6Px	TSSOP20	32	4	0	Full Compatible	Ξ
STM32F042F6Px	TSSOP20	32	6	2	Need HW change	
STM32E070E6Px	TSSOP20	32	6	2	Need HW change	-



4. To see the list of compatible MCUs at any time, select **Outputs** under the **Window** menu.

To load the current configuration to another compatible MCU, double-click the list of compatible MCUs.

- 5. To remove some constraints on the search criteria, several solutions are possible:
 - Select the **Ignore Pinning Status** checkbox to ignore pin status (locked pins).
 - Select the **Ignore Power Pins** checkbox not to take into account the power pins.
 - Select the **Ignore System Pins** not take into account the system pins. Hover the mouse over the checkbox to display a tooltip that lists the system pins available on the current MCU.



11 FAQ

11.1 On the Pinout configuration pane, why does STM32CubeMX move some functions when I add a new peripheral mode?

You may have unselected Keep Current Signals Placement. In this case, the tool performs an automatic remapping to optimize your placement.

11.2 How can I manually force a function remapping?

You should use the Manual Remapping feature.

11.3 Why are some pins highlighted in yellow or in light green in the Chip view? Why cannot I change the function of some pins (when I click some pins, nothing happens)?

These pins are specific pins (such as power supply or BOOT) which are not available as peripheral signals.

11.4 Why do I get the error "Java 7 update 45' when installing 'Java 7 update 45' or a more recent version of the JRE?

The problem generally occurs on 64-bit Windows operating system, when several versions of Java are installed on your computer and the 64-bit Java installation is too old.

During STM32CubeMX installation, the computer searches for a 64-bit installation of Java.

- If one is found, the 'Java 7 update 45' minimum version prerequisite is checked. If the installed version is older, an error is displayed to request the upgrade.
- If no 64-bit installation is found, STM32CubeMX searches for a 32-bit installation. If one is found and the version is too old, the 'Java 7 update 45' error is displayed. The user must update the installation to solve the issue.

To avoid this issue from occurring, it is recommended to perform one of the following actions:

- 1. Remove all Java installations and reinstall only one version (32 or 64 bits) (Java 7 update 45 or more recent).
- 2. Keep 32-bit and 64-bit installations but make sure that the 64-bit version is at least Java 7 update 45.
- Note: Some users (Java developers for example) may need to check the PC environment variables defining hard-coded Java paths (e.g. JAVA_HOME or PATH) and update them so that they point to the latest Java installation.

On Windows 7 you can check your Java installation using the Control Panel. To do this, double-click icon from Control Panel/All Control Panel to open the Java settings window (see *Figure 209*):



Java Contr	rol Panel		25	
General Java	Security Advanced			
View and ma applications a	inage Java Runtime versions and applets.	and settings for Jav	iew	
👍 Java Runtime En	vironment Settings			×
User System				-
Platform Product	Location Path		Runtime En.	
1.7 1.7.0_45	http://java C:\Program	Files\Java\(re7\	V	\square
			ж	
			1	

Figure 209. Java Control Panel

You can also enter '*java* –*version*' as an MS-DOS command to check the version of your latest Java installation (the Java program called here is a copy of the program installed under C:\Windows\System32):

java version "1.7.0_45"
Java (TM) SE Runtime Environment (build 1.7.0_45-b18)
Java HotSpot (TM) 64-Bit Server VM (build 24.45-b08, mixed mode)

11.5 Why does the RTC multiplexer remain inactive on the Clock tree view?

To enable the RTC multiplexer, the user shall enable the RTC peripheral in the **Pinout** view as indicated in below:

J		
···· 📝 Acti	vate Clock Source	
···· 🔲 Acti	vate Calendar	
Alarm A	Disable	-
····Alarm B	Disable	
WakeUp	Disable	
···· 🔲 Time	estamp Routed to AF1	
🔲 Tam	per1 Routed to AF1	
Calibrati	on Disable	•
🔲 Refe	erence clock detection	
1		





11.6 How can I select LSE and HSE as clock source and change the frequency?

The LSE and HSE clocks become active once the RCC is configured as such in the **Pinout** view. See *Figure 211* for an example.





The clock source frequency can then be edited and the external source selected:



Figure 212. Pinout view - Setting LSE/HSE clock frequency

11.7 Why STM32CubeMX does not allow me to configure PC13, PC14, PC15 and PI8 as outputs when one of them is already configured as an output?

STM32CubeMX implements the restriction documented in the reference manuals as a footnote in table Output Voltage characteristics:

"PC13, PC14, PC15 and PI8 are supplied through the power switch. Since the switch only sinks a limited amount of current (3 mA), the use of GPIOs PC13 to PC15 and PI8 in output mode is limited: the speed should not exceed 2 MHz with a maximum load of 30 pF and these I/Os must not be used as a current source (e.g. to drive a LED)."



UM1718

Appendix A STM32CubeMX pin assignment rules

The following pin assignment rules are implemented in STM32CubeMX:

- Rule 1: Block consistency
- Rule 2: Block inter-dependency
- Rule 3: One block = one peripheral mode
- Rule 4: Block remapping (only for STM32F10x)
- Rule 5: Function remapping
- Rule 6: Block shifting (only for STM32F10x)
- Rule 7: Setting or clearing a peripheral mode
- Rule 8: Mapping a function individually (if Keep Current Placement is unchecked)
- Rule 9: GPIO signals mapping

A.1 Block consistency

When setting a pin signal (provided there is no ambiguity about the corresponding peripheral mode), all the pins/signals required for this mode are mapped and pins are shown in green (otherwise the configured pin is shown in orange).

When clearing a pin signal, all the pins/signals required for this mode are unmapped simultaneously and the pins turn back to gray.

Example of block mapping with a STM32F107x MCU

If the user assigns I2C1_SMBA function to PB5, then STM32CubeMX configures pins and modes as follows:

- I2C1_SCL and I2C1_SDA signals are mapped to the PB6 and PB7 pins, respectively (see *Figure 213*).
- I2C1 peripheral mode is set to SMBus-Alert mode.





Figure 213. Block mapping

Example of block remapping with a STM32F107x MCU

If the user assigns GPIO_Output to PB6, STM32CubeMX automatically disables I2C1 SMBus-Alert peripheral mode from the peripheral tree view and updates the other I2C1 pins (PB5 and PB7) as follows:

- If they are unpinned, the pin configuration is reset (pin grayed out).
- If they are pinned, the peripheral signal assigned to the pins is kept and the pins are highlighted in orange since they no longer match a peripheral mode (see *Figure 214*).





Figure 214. Block remapping

For STM32CubeMX to find an alternative solution for the I2C peripheral mode, the user will need to unpin I2C1 pins and select the I2C1 mode from the peripheral tree view (see *Figure 215* and *Figure 216*).





Figure 215. Block remapping - example 1





Figure 216. Block remapping - example 2

A.2 Block inter-dependency

On the **Chip** view, the same signal can appear as an alternate function for multiple pins. However it can be mapped only once.

As a consequence, for STM32F1 MCUs, two blocks of pins cannot be selected simultaneously for the same peripheral mode: when a block/signal from a block is selected, the alternate blocks are cleared.

Example of block remapping of SPI in full-duplex master mode with a STM32F107x MCU

If SPI1 full-duplex master mode is selected from the tree view, by default the corresponding SPI signals are assigned to PB3, PB4 and PB5 pins (see *Figure 217*).

If the user assigns to PA6 the SPI1_MISO function currently assigned to PB4, STM32CubeMX clears the PB4 pin from the SPI1_MISO function, as well as all the other pins configured for this block, and moves the corresponding SPI1 functions to the relevant pins in the same block as the PB4 pin (see *Figure 218*).

(by pressing CTRL and clicking PB4 to show PA6 alternate function in blue, then drag and drop the signal to pin PA6)





Figure 217. Block inter-dependency - SPI signals assigned to PB3/4/5





Figure 218. Block inter-dependency - SPI1_MISO function assigned to PA6



A.3 One block = one peripheral mode

When a block of pins is fully configured in the **Chip** view (shown in green), the related peripheral mode is automatically set in the Peripherals tree.

Example of STM32F107x MCU

Assigning the I2C1_SMBA function to PB5 automatically configures I2C1 peripheral in SMBus-Alert mode (see Peripheral tree in *Figure 219*).

Figure 219. One block = one peripheral mode - I2C1_SMBA function assigned to PB5



A.4 Block remapping (STM32F10x only)

To configure a peripheral mode, STM32CubeMX selects a block of pins and assigns each mode signal to a pin in this block. In doing so, it looks for the first free block to which the mode can be mapped.

When setting a peripheral mode, if at least one pin in the default block is already used, STM32CubeMX tries to find an alternate block. If none can be found, it either selects the functions in a different sequence, or unchecks Keep Current Signals Placement, and remaps all the blocks to find a solution.

Example

STM32CubeMX remaps USART3 hardware-flow-control mode to the (PD8-PD9-PD11-PD12) block, because PB14 of USART3 default block is already allocated to the SPI2_MISO function (see *Figure 220*).





A.5 Function remapping

To configure a peripheral mode, STM32CubeMX assigns each signal of the mode to a pin. In doing so, it will look for the first free pin the signal can be mapped to.

Example using STM32F415x

When configuring USART3 for the Synchronous mode, STM32CubeMX discovered that the default PB10 pin for USART3_TX signal was already used by SPI. It thus remapped it to PD8 (see *Figure 221*).



Figure 221. Function remapping example



A.6 Block shifting (only for STM32F10x and when "Keep Current Signals placement" is unchecked)

If a block cannot be mapped and there are no free alternate solutions, STM32CubeMX tries to free the pins by remapping all the peripheral modes impacted by the shared pin.

Example

With the Keep current signal placement enabled, if USART3 synchronous mode is set first, the Asynchronous default block (PB10-PB11) is mapped and Ethernet becomes unavailable (shown in red) (see *Figure 222*).

Unchecking Keep Current Signals Placement allows STM32CubeMX shifting blocks around and freeing a block for the Ethernet MII mode. (see *Figure 223*).



Figure 222. Block shifting not applied





Figure 223. Block shifting applied

A.7 Setting and clearing a peripheral mode

The Peripherals panel and the **Chip** view are linked: when a peripheral mode is set or cleared, the corresponding pin functions are set or cleared.

A.8 Mapping a function individually

When STM32CubeMX needs a pin that has already been assigned manually to a function (no peripheral mode set), it can move this function to another pin, only if Keep Current Signals Placement is unchecked and the function is not pinned (no pin icon).

A.9 GPIO signals mapping

I/O signals (GPIO_Input, GPIO_Output, GPIO_Analog) can be assigned to pins either manually through the **Chip** view or automatically through the Pinout menu. Such pins can no longer be assigned automatically to another signal: STM32CubeMX signal automatic placement does not take into account this pin anymore since it does not shift I/O signals to other pins.

The pin can still be manually assigned to another signal or to a reset state.



Appendix B STM32CubeMX C code generation design choices and limitations

This section summarizes STM32CubeMX design choices and limitations.

B.1 STM32CubeMX generated C code and user sections

The C code generated by STM32CubeMX provides user sections as illustrated below. They allow user C code to be inserted and preserved at next C code generation.

User sections shall neither be moved nor renamed. Only the user sections defined by STM32CubeMX are preserved. User created sections will be ignored and lost at next C code generation.

```
/* USER CODE BEGIN 0 */
(..)
/* USER CODE END 0 */
```

Note: STM32CubeMX may generate C code in some user sections. It will be up to the user to clean the parts that may become obsolete in this section. For example, the while(1) loop in the main function is placed inside a user section as illustrated below:

```
/* Infinite loop */
   /* USER CODE BEGIN WHILE */
   while (1)
   {
    /* USER CODE END WHILE */
    /* USER CODE BEGIN 3 */
   }
/* USER CODE END 3 */
```

B.2 STM32CubeMX design choices for peripheral initialization

STM32CubeMX generates peripheral _*Init* functions that can be easily identified thanks to the MX_ prefix:

```
static void MX_GPIO_Init(void);
static void MX_<Peripheral Instance Name>_Init(void);
static void MX_I2S2_Init(void);
```

An *MX_<peripheral instance name>_Ini*t function exists for each peripheral instance selected by the user (e.g, *MX_I2S2_Init*). It performs the initialization of the relevant handle structure (e.g, &hi2s2 for I2S second instance) that is required for HAL driver initialization (e.g., *HAL_I2S_Init*) and the actual call to this function:

```
void MX_I2S2_Init(void)
{
    hi2s2.Instance = SPI2;
    hi2s2.Init.Mode = I2S_MODE_MASTER_TX;
    hi2s2.Init.Standard = I2S_STANDARD_PHILLIPS;
```



```
hi2s2.Init.DataFormat = I2S_DATAFORMAT_16B;
hi2s2.Init.MCLKOutput = I2S_MCLKOUTPUT_DISABLE;
hi2s2.Init.AudioFreq = I2S_AUDIOFREQ_192K;
hi2s2.Init.CPOL = I2S_CPOL_LOW;
hi2s2.Init.ClockSource = I2S_CLOCK_PLL;
hi2s2.Init.FullDuplexMode = I2S_FULLDUPLEXMODE_ENABLE;
HAL_I2S_Init(&hi2s2);
```

By default, the peripheral initialization is done in *main.c.* If the peripheral is used by a middleware mode, the peripheral initialization can be done in the middleware corresponding .c file.

Customized HAL_<Peripheral Name>_MspInit() functions are created in the stm32f4xx_hal_msp.c file to configure the low-level hardware (GPIO, CLOCK) for the selected peripherals.

B.3 STM32CubeMX design choices and limitations for middleware initialization

B.3.1 Overview

}

STM32CubeMX does not support C user code insertion in Middleware stack native files although stacks such as LwIP might require it in some use cases.

STM32CubeMX generates middleware *Init* functions that can be easily identified thanks to the MX_prefix:

```
MX_LWIP_Init(); // defined in lwip.h file
MX_USB_HOST_Init(); // defined in usb_host.h file
MX_FATFS_Init(); // defined in fatfs.h file
```

Note however the following exceptions:

- No Init function is generated for FreeRTOS unless the user chooses, from the Project settings window, to generate Init functions as pairs of .c/.h files. Instead, a StartDefaultTask function is defined in the main.c file and CMSIS-RTOS native function (osKernelStart) is called in the main function.
- If FreeRTOS is enabled, the *Init* functions for the other middlewares in use are called from the *StartDefaultTask* function in the main.c file.
 Example:

```
void StartDefaultTask(void const * argument)
{
    /* init code for FATFS */
    MX_FATFS_Init();
    /* init code for LWIP */
    MX_LWIP_Init();
    /* init code for USB_HOST */
    MX_USB_HOST_Init();
    /* USER CODE BEGIN 5 */
    /* Infinite loop */
```



```
for(;;)
{
    osDelay(1);
}
/* USER CODE END 5 */
```

B.3.2 USB Host

}

USB peripheral initialization is performed within the middleware initialization C code in the *usbh_conf.c* file, while USB stack initialization is done within the *usb_host.c* file.

When using the USB Host middleware, the user is responsible for implementing the USBH_UserProcess callback function in the generated usb_host.c file.

From STM32CubeMX user interface, the user can select to register one class or all classes if the application requires switching dynamically between classes.

B.3.3 USB Device

USB peripheral initialization is performed within the middleware initialization C code in the *usbd_conf.c* file, while USB stack initialization is done within the *usb_device.c* file.

USB VID, PID and String standard descriptors are configured via STM32CubeMX user interface and available in the *usbd_desc.c* generated file. Other standard descriptors (configuration, interface) are hard-coded in the same file preventing support for USB composite devices.

When using the USB Device middleware, the user is responsible for implementing the functions in the *usbd_<classname>_if.c* class interface file for all device classes (e.g., usbd_storage_if.c).

USB MTP and CCID classes are not supported.

B.3.4 FatFs

FatFs configuration is available in the *ffconf.h* generated file.

The initialization of the SDIO peripheral for the FatFs SD Card mode and of the FMC peripheral for the FatFs External SDRAM and External SRAM modes are kept in the *main.c* file.

Some files need to be modified by the user to match user board specificities (BSP drivers in STM32Cube embedded software package can be used as example):

- *bsp_driver_sd.c/.h* generated files when using FatFs SD Card mode
- *bsp_driver_sram.c/.h* generated files when using FatFs External SRAM mode
- *bsp_driver_sdram.c/.h* generated files when using FatFs External SDRAM mode.

Multi-drive FatFs is supported, which means that multiple logical drives can be used by the application (External SDRAM, External SRAM, SD Card, USB Disk, User defined). However support for multiple instances of a given logical drive is not available (e.g. FatFs using two instances of USB hosts or several RAM disks).



NOR and NAND Flash memory are not supported. In this case, the user shall select the FatFs user-defined mode and update the *user_diskio.c* driver file generated to implement the interface between the middleware and the selected peripheral.

B.3.5 FreeRTOS

FreeRTOS configuration is available in *FreeRTOSConfig.h* generated file.

When FreeRTOS is enabled, all other selected middleware modes (e.g., LwIP, FatFs, USB) will be initialized within the same FreeRTOS thread in the main.c file.

When GENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS, CHECK_FOR_STACK_OVERFLOW, USE_IDLE_HOOK, USE_TICK_HOOK and USE_MALLOC_FAILED_HOOK parameters are activated, STM32CubeMX generates *freertos.c* file with empty functions that the user shall implement. This is highlighted by the tooltip (see *Figure 224*).

Figure 224. FreeRTOS HOOK functions to be completed by user

and a Co					
	aarch (Crtl+E)				
Versions					
	ISIS-RTOS version	1.02			
Ere	eeRTQS version	8.2.3			
E Kernel s	ettings	where w			
Hook fur	nction related definitions				
US	E IDLE HOOK	Disabled			
US	 SE_TICK_HOOK	Disabled			
US	E_MALLOC_FAILED_HOOK	Disabled			
CH	ECK_FOR_STACK_OVERFLOW	Disabled			
Run time	e and task stats gathering related definitio	ns			
US	E_TRACE_FACILITY	Enabled			
GE	GENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS Disabled				
Co-routi	ine related definitions				
US	E_CO_ROUTINES	Disabled			
MA	AX_CO_ROUTINE_PRIORITIES	2			
Softwar	e timer definitions				
US	E_TIMERS	Enabled			

UM1718

B.3.6 LwIP

LwIP initialization function is defined in *lwip.c*, while LwIP configuration is available in *lwipopts.h* generated file.

STM32CubeMX supports LwIP over Ethernet only. The Ethernet peripheral initialization is done within the middleware initialization C code.

STM32CubeMX does not support user C code insertion in stack native files. However, some LwIP use cases require modifying stack native files (e.g., *cc.h, mib2.c*): user modifications shall be backed up since they will be lost at next STM32CubeMX generation.

Starting with release 1.5, STM32CubeMX LwIP supports IPv6 (see Figure 226).

DHCP must be disabled, to configure a static IP address.

Configure the below parameters :	V 7 1	
Search : Search (Crtl+F)	◆ ◆	
LwIP Version		
LwIP Version (Version of LwIP sup.	. 1.4.1	
DHCP Option		
LWIP_DHCP (DHCP Module)	Enabled	
RTOS Settings		E
WITH_RTOS (Use FREERTOS **	Disabled	
Protocols Options		
LWIP_ICMP (ICMP Module Activati.	Enabled	
LWIP_IGMP (IGMP Module)	Disabled	
LWIP_DNS (DNS Module)	Disabled	
LWIP_UDP (UDP Module)	Enabled	
MEMP_NUM_LIDP_PCB (Number of	4	T

Figure 225. LwIP 1.4.1 configuration



Figure 226. LwIP 1.5 configuration

Search (CrtH+F) LwIP Version LwIP Version (Version of LwIP supported b 1.5.0_RC0_20160211 DHCP Option LWIP_DHCP (DHCP Module) Enabled RTOS Settings WITH_RTOS (Use FREERTOS ** CubeMX Disabled Protocols Options LWIP_ICMP (ICMP Module Activation) Enabled LWIP_IGMP (IGMP Module) Disabled LWIP_DNS (DNS Module) Disabled LWIP_UDP (UDP Module) Enabled MEMP_NUM_UDP_PCB (Number of UDP Co 4 LWIP_TCP (TCP Module) Enabled			
□ LwIP Version ▲ LwIP Version (Version of LwIP supported b 1.5.0_RC0_20160211 □ □ DHCP Option ■ LWIP_DHCP (DHCP Module) ■ ■ ■ RTOS Settings ■ WITH_RTOS (Use FREERTOS ** CubeMX Disabled ■ ■ Protocols Options ■ LWIP_ICMP (ICMP Module Activation) ■ ■ LWIP_IGMP (IGMP Module) Disabled ■ LWIP_DNS (DNS Module) ■ ■ LWIP_UDP (UDP Module) ■ ■ LWIP_UDP (UDP Module) ■ ■ MEMP_NUM_UDP_PCB (Number of UDP Co 4 ■ ■ LWIP_TCP (TCP Module) ■ ■	Search : Search (CrtI+F)		
LwIP Version (Version of LwIP supported b 1.5.0_RC0_20160211 DHCP Option LWIP_DHCP (DHCP Module) Enabled RTOS Settings WITH_RTOS (Use FREERTOS ** CubeMX Disabled Protocols Options LWIP_ICMP (ICMP Module Activation) Enabled LWIP_IGMP (IGMP Module) Disabled LWIP_DNS (DNS Module) Disabled LWIP_DNS (DNS Module) Enabled LWIP_UDP (UDP Module) Enabled LWIP_UDP (TCP Module) Enabled MEMP_NUM_UDP_PCB (Number of UDP Co 4 LWIP_TCP (TCP Module) Enabled	LwIP Version		-
□ DHCP Option Enabled □ RTOS Settings WITH_RTOS (Use FREERTOS ** CubeMX Disabled □ Protocols Options Enabled □ LWIP_ICMP (ICMP Module Activation) Enabled □ LWIP_IGMP (IGMP Module) Disabled □ LWIP_DNS (DNS Module) Disabled □ LWIP_UDP (UDP Module) Enabled □ LWIP_DNS (DNS Module) Disabled □ LWIP_DNS (DNS Module) Enabled □ LWIP_UDP (UDP Module) Enabled □ LWIP_TCP (TCP Module) Enabled	LwIP Version (Version of LwIP supported b	. 1.5.0_RC0_20160211	
LWIP_DHCP (DHCP Module) Enabled RTOS Settings WITH_RTOS (Use FREERTOS ** CubeMX Disabled Protocols Options Enabled LWIP_ICMP (ICMP Module Activation) Enabled LWIP_IGMP (IGMP Module) Disabled LWIP_DNS (DNS Module) Disabled LWIP_UDP (UDP Module) Enabled LWIP_UDP (UDP Module) Enabled LWIP_UDP (UDP Module) Enabled MEMP_NUM_UDP_PCB (Number of UDP Co 4 Enabled LWIP_TCP (TCP Module) Enabled	DHCP Option		
□ RTOS Settings WITH_RTOS (Use FREERTOS ** CubeMX Disabled □ Protocols Options LWIP_ICMP (ICMP Module Activation) Enabled LWIP_IGMP (IGMP Module) Disabled LWIP_DNS (DNS Module) Disabled LWIP_UDP (UDP Module) Enabled LWIP_UDP (UDP Module) Enabled MEMP_NUM_UDP_PCB (Number of UDP Co 4 Enabled	LWIP_DHCP (DHCP Module)	Enabled	
WITH_RTOS (Use FREERTOS ** CubeMX Disabled Protocols Options LWIP_ICMP (ICMP Module Activation) Enabled LWIP_IGMP (IGMP Module) Disabled LWIP_DNS (DNS Module) Disabled LWIP_UDP (UDP Module) Enabled LWIP_UDP (UDP Module) Enabled MEMP_NUM_UDP_PCB (Number of UDP Co 4 Enabled LWIP_TCP (TCP Module) Enabled	RTOS Settings		
Protocols Options Enabled LWIP_ICMP (ICMP Module Activation) Enabled LWIP_IGMP (IGMP Module) Disabled LWIP_DNS (DNS Module) Disabled LWIP_UDP (UDP Module) Enabled MEMP_NUM_UDP_PCB (Number of UDP Co 4 Enabled LWIP_TCP (TCP Module) Enabled	WITH_RTOS (Use FREERTOS ** CubeMX	Disabled	
LWIP_ICMP (ICMP Module Activation) Enabled LWIP_IGMP (IGMP Module) Disabled LWIP_DNS (DNS Module) Disabled LWIP_UDP (UDP Module) Enabled MEMP_NUM_UDP_PCB (Number of UDP Co 4 4 LWIP_TCP (TCP Module) Enabled	Protocols Options		=
LWIP_IGMP (IGMP Module) Disabled LWIP_DNS (DNS Module) Disabled LWIP_UDP (UDP Module) Enabled MEMP_NUM_UDP_PCB (Number of UDP Co 4	LWIP_ICMP (ICMP Module Activation)	Enabled	
LWIP_DNS (DNS Module) Disabled LWIP_UDP (UDP Module) Enabled MEMP_NUM_UDP_PCB (Number of UDP Co 4 LWIP_TCP (TCP Module) Enabled	LWIP_IGMP (IGMP Module)	Disabled	
LWIP_UDP (UDP Module) Enabled MEMP_NUM_UDP_PCB (Number of UDP Co 4 LWIP_TCP (TCP Module) Enabled	LWIP_DNS (DNS Module)	Disabled	
MEMP_NUM_UDP_PCB (Number of UDP Co 4 LWIP_TCP (TCP Module) Enabled	LWIP_UDP (UDP Module)	Enabled	
LWIP_TCP (TCP Module) Enabled	MEMP_NUM_UDP_PCB (Number of UDP Co	. 4	
	LWIP_TCP (TCP Module)	Enabled	-

STM32CubeMX generated C code will report compilation errors when specific parameters are enabled (disabled by default). The user must fix the issues with a stack patch (downloaded from Internet) or user C code. The following parameters generate an error:

- MEM_USE_POOLS: user C code to be added either in *lwipopts.h* or in cc.h (stack file).
- PPP_SUPPORT, PPPOE_SUPPORT: user C code required
- MEMP_SEPARATE_POOLS with MEMP_OVERFLOW_CHECK > 0: a stack patch required
- MEM_LIBC_MALLOC & RTOS enabled: stack patch required
- LWIP_EVENT_API: stack patch required

In STM32CubeMX, the user must enable FreeRTOS in order to use LwIP with the netconn and sockets APIs. These APIs require the use of threads and consequently of an operating system. Without FreeRTOS, only the LwIP event-driven raw API can be used.



Appendix C STM32 microcontrollers naming conventions

STM32 microcontroller part numbers are codified following the below naming conventions:

Device subfamilies

The higher the number, the more features available.

For example STM32L0 line includes STM32L051, L052, L053, L061, L062, L063 subfamilies where STM32L06x part numbers come with AES while STM32L05x do not. The last digit indicates the level of features. In the above example:

- 1 =Access line
- 2 = with USB
- 3 = with USB and LCD.
- Pin counts
 - F = 20 pins
 - G = 28 pins
 - K = 32 pins
 - T = 36 pins
 - S = 44 pins
 - C = 48 pins
 - R = 64 pins (or 66 pins)
 - M = 80 pins
 - O = 90 pins
 - V = 100 pins
 - Q= 132 pins (e. g. STM32L162QDH6)
 - Z=144
 - I=176 (+25)
 - B = 208 pins (e. g.: STM32F429BIT6)
 - N = 216 pins
- Flash memory sizes
 - 4 = 16 Kbytes of Flash memory
 - 6 = 32 Kbytes of Flash memory
 - 8 = 64 Kbytes of Flash memory
 - B = 128 Kbytes of Flash memory
 - C = 256 Kbytes of Flash memory
 - D = 384 Kbytes of Flash memory
 - E = 512 Kbytes of Flash memory
 - F = 768 Kbytes of Flash memory
 - G = 1024 Kbytes of Flash memory
 - I = 2048 Kbytes of Flash memory
- Packages
 - B = SDIP
 - H = BGA



57



- M = SO
- P = TSSOP
- T = LQFP
- U = VFQFPN
- Y = WLCSP

Figure 227 shows an example of STM32 microcontroller part numbering scheme.

Figure 227. STM32 microcontroller part numbering scher
--

Example:	STM32	F	439 V	1	T 6 XX	x
Device family						
STM32 = ARM-based 32-bit microcontroller	1					
Product type						
F = general-purpose						
Device subfamily						
437= STM32F437xx, USB OTG FS/HS, camera interface, Ethernet, cryptographic acceleration						
439= STM32F439xx, USB OTG FS/HS, camera interface, Ethernet, LCD-TFT, cryptographic acceleration						
Pin count						
V = 100 pins						
Z = 144 pins						
A = 169 pins						
I = 176 pins						
B = 208 pins						
N = 216 pins						
Flash memory size						
G = 1024 Kbytes of Flash memory						
I = 2048 Kbytes of Flash memory						
Package						
T = LQFP					-	
H = BGA						
Y = WLCSP						
Temperature range						
6 = Industrial temperature range, -40 to 85 °C.						
7 = Industrial temperature range, -40 to 105 °C.						
Options						
xxx = programmed parts						
TR = tape and reel						



Appendix D STM32 microcontrollers power consumption parameters

This section provides an overview on how to use STM32CubeMX Power Consumption Calculator.

Microcontroller power consumption depends on chip size, supply voltage, clock frequency and operating mode. Embedded applications can optimize STM32 MCU power consumption by reducing the clock frequency when fast processing is not required and choosing the optimal operating mode and voltage range to run from. A description of STM32 power modes and voltage range is provided below.

D.1 Power modes

STM32 MCUs support different power modes (refer to STM32 MCU datasheets for full details).

D.1.1 STM32L1 series

STM32L1 microcontrollers feature up to 6 power modes, including 5 low-power modes:

Run mode

This mode offers the highest performance using HSE/HSI clock sources. The CPU runs up to 32 MHz and the voltage regulator is enabled.

• Sleep mode

This mode uses HSE or HSI as system clock sources. The voltage regulator is enabled and the CPU is stopped. All peripherals continue to operate and can wake up the CPU when an interrupt/event occurs.

• Low- power run mode

This mode uses the multispeed internal (MSI) RC oscillator set to the minimum clock frequency (131 kHz) and the internal regulator in low-power mode. The clock frequency and the number of enabled peripherals are limited.

• Low-power sleep mode

This mode is achieved by entering Sleep mode. The internal voltage regulator is in lowpower mode. The clock frequency and the number of enabled peripherals are limited. A typical example would be a timer running at 32 kHz.

When the wakeup is triggered by an event or an interrupt, the system returns to the Run mode with the regulator ON.

Stop mode

This mode achieves the lowest power consumption while retaining RAM and register contents. Clocks are stopped. The real-time clock (RTC) an be backed up by using LSE/LSI at 32 kHz/37 kHz. The number of enabled peripherals is limited. The voltage regulator is in low-power mode.

The device can be woken up from Stop mode by any of the EXTI lines.

• Standby mode

This mode achieves the lowest power consumption. The internal voltage regulator is switched off so that the entire V_{CORE} domain is powered off. Clocks are stopped and the real-time clock (RTC) can be preserved up by using LSE/LSI at 32 kHz/37 kHz.



RAM and register contents are lost except for the registers in the Standby circuitry. The number of enabled peripherals is even more limited than in Stop mode.

The device exits Standby mode upon reset, rising edge on one of the three WKUP pins, or if an RTC event occurs (if the RTC is ON).

Note: When exiting Stop or Standby modes to enter the Run mode, STM32L1 MCUs go through a state where the MSI oscillator is used as clock source. This transition can have a significant impact on the global power consumption. For this reason, the Power Consumption Calculator introduces two transition steps: **WU_FROM_STOP** and **WU_FROM_STANDBY**. During these steps, the clock is automatically configured to MSI.

D.1.2 STM32F4 series

STM32F4 microcontrollers feature a total of 5 power modes, including 4 low-power modes:

Run mode

This is the default mode at power-on or after a system reset. It offers the highest performance using HSE/HSI clock sources. The CPU can run at the maximum frequency depending on the selected power scale.

• Sleep mode

Only the CPU is stopped. All peripherals continue to operate and can wake up the CPU when an interrupt/even occurs. The clock source is the clock that was set before entering Sleep mode.

• Stop mode

This mode achieves a very low power consumption using the RC oscillator as clock source. All clocks in the 1.2 V domain are stopped as well as CPU and peripherals. PLL, HSI RC and HSE crystal oscillators are disabled. The content of registers and internal SRAM are kept.

The voltage regulator can be put either in normal Main regulator mode (MR) or in Lowpower regulator mode (LPR). Selecting the regulator in low-power regulator mode increases the wakeup time.

The Flash memory can be put either in Stop mode to achieve a fast wakeup time or in Deep power-down to obtain a lower consumption with a slow wakeup time.

The Stop mode features two sub-modes:

- Stop in Normal mode (default mode)

In this mode, the 1.2 V domain is preserved in nominal leakage mode and the minimum V12 voltage is 1.08 V.

Stop in Under-drive mode

In this mode, the 1.2 V domain is preserved in reduced leakage mode and V12 voltage is less than 1.08 V. The regulator (in Main or Low-power mode) is in under-drive or low-voltage mode. The Flash memory must be in Deep-power-down mode. The wakeup time is about 100 µs higher than in normal mode.

• Standby mode

This mode achieves very low power consumption with the RC oscillator as a clock source. The internal voltage regulator is switched off so that the entire 1.2 V domain is powered off: CPU and peripherals are stopped. The PLL, the HSI RC and the HSE crystal oscillators are disabled. SRAM and register contents are lost except for registers in the backup domain and the 4-byte backup SRAM when selected. Only RTC and LSE oscillator blocks are powered. The device exits Standby mode when an



external reset (NRST pin), an IWDG reset, a rising edge on the WKUP pin, or an RTC alarm/ wakeup/ tamper/time stamp event occurs.

V_{BAT} operation

It allows to significantly reduced power consumption compared to the Standby mode. This mode is available when the V_{BAT} pin powering the Backup domain is connected to an optional standby voltage supplied by a battery or by another source. The V_{BAT} domain is preserved (RTC registers, RTC backup register and backup SRAM) and RTC and LSE oscillator blocks powered. The main difference compared to the Standby mode is external interrupts and RTC alarm/events do not exit the device from V_{BAT} operation. Increasing V_{DD} to reach the minimum threshold does.

D.1.3 STM32L0 series

STM32L0 microcontrollers feature up to 8 power modes, including 7 low-power modes to achieve the best compromise between low-power consumption, short startup time and available wakeup sources:

Run mode

This mode offers the highest performance using HSE/HSI clock sources. The CPU can run up to 32 MHz and the voltage regulator is enabled.

Sleep mode

This mode uses HSE or HSI as system clock sources. The voltage regulator is enabled and only the CPU is stopped. All peripherals continue to operate and can wake up the CPU when an interrupt/event occurs.

• Low-power run mode

This mode uses the internal regulator in low-power mode and the multispeed internal (MSI) RC oscillator set to the minimum clock frequency (131 kHz). In Low-power run mode, the clock frequency and the number of enabled peripherals are both limited.

Low-power sleep mode

This mode is achieved by entering Sleep mode with the internal voltage regulator in low-power mode. Both the clock frequency and the number of enabled peripherals are limited. Event or interrupt can revert the system to Run mode with regulator on.

• Stop mode with RTC

The Stop mode achieves the lowest power consumption with, while retaining the RAM, register contents and real time clock. The voltage regulator is in low-power mode. LSE or LSI is still running. All clocks in the V_{CORE} domain are stopped, the PLL, MSI RC, HSE crystal and HSI RC oscillators are disabled.

Some peripherals featuring wakeup capability can enable the HSI RC during Stop mode to detect their wakeup condition. The device can be woken up from Stop mode by any of the EXTI line, in 3.5 μ s, and the processor can serve the interrupt or resume the code.

• Stop mode without RTC

This mode is identical to "Stop mode with RTC ", except for the RTC clock which is stopped here.

• Standby mode with RTC

The Standby mode achieves the lowest power consumption with the real time clock running. The internal voltage regulator is switched off so that the entire V_{CORE} domain



is powered off. The PLL, MSI RC, HSE crystal and HSI RC oscillators are also switched off. The LSE or LSI is still running.

After entering Standby mode, the RAM and register contents are lost except for registers in the Standby circuitry (wakeup logic, IWDG, RTC, LSI, LSE Crystal 32 KHz oscillator, RCC_CSR register).

The device exits Standby mode in 60 μ s when an external reset (NRST pin), an IWDG reset, a rising edge on one of the three WKUP pins, RTC alarm (Alarm A or Alarm B),

RTC tamper event, RTC timestamp event or RTC Wakeup event occurs.

• Standby mode without RTC

This mode is identical to Standby mode with RTC, except that the RTC, LSE and LSI clocks are stopped.

The device exits Standby mode in 60 μs when an external reset (NRST pin) or a rising edge on one of the three WKUP pin occurs.

Note: The RTC, the IWDG, and the corresponding clock sources are not stopped automatically by entering Stop or Standby mode. The LCD is not stopped automatically by entering Stop mode.

D.2 Power consumption ranges

STM32 MCUs power consumption can be further optimized thanks to the dynamic voltage scaling feature: the main internal regulator output voltage V12 that supplies the logic (CPU, digital peripherals, SRAM and Flash memory) can be adjusted by software by selecting a power range (STM32L1 and STM32L0) or power scale (STM32 F4).

Power consumption range definitions are provided below (refer to STM32 MCU datasheets for full details).

D.2.1 STM32L1 series feature 3 V_{CORE} ranges

 High Performance Range 1 (V_{DD} range limited to 2.0-3.6 V), with the CPU running at up to 32 MHz

The voltage regulator outputs a 1.8 V voltage (typical) as long as the V_{DD} input voltage is above 2.0 V. Flash program and erase operations can be performed.

 Medium Performance Range 2 (full V_{DD} range), with a maximum CPU frequency of 16 MHz

At 1.5 V, the Flash memory is still functional but with medium read access time. Flash program and erase operations are still possible.

 Low Performance Range 3 (full V_{DD} range), with a maximum CPU frequency limited to 4 MHz (generated only with the multispeed internal RC oscillator clock source)

At 1.2 V, the Flash memory is still functional but with slow read access time. Flash Program and erase operations are no longer available.



D.2.2 STM32F4 series feature several V_{CORE} scales

The scale can be modified only when the PLL is OFF and when HSI or HSE is selected as system clock source.

- Scale 1 (V12 voltage range limited to 1.26-1.40 V), default mode at reset HCLK frequency range = 144 MHz to 168 MHz (180 MHz with over-drive). This is the default mode at reset.
- Scale 2 (V12 voltage range limited to 1.20 to 1.32 V)
 HCLK frequency range is up to 144 MHz (168 MHz with over-drive)
- Scale 3 (V12 voltage range limited to 1.08 to 1.20 V), default mode when exiting Stop mode

HCLK frequency ≤120 MHz.

The voltage scaling is adjusted to $f_{\mbox{HCLK}}$ frequency as follows:

- STM32F429x/39x MCUs:
 - Scale 1: up to 168 MHz (up to 180 MHz with over-drive)
 - Scale 2: from 120 to 144 MHz (up to 168 MHz with over-drive)
 - Scale 3: up to 120 MHz.
- STM32F401x MCUs:

No Scale 1

- Scale 2: from 60 to 84 MHz
- **Scale 3:** up to 60 MHz.
- STM32F40x/41x MCUs:
 - Scale 1: up to 168 MHz
 - Scale 2: up to 144 MHz

D.2.3 STM32L0 series feature 3 V_{CORE} ranges

- Range 1 (V_{DD} range limited to 1.71 to 3.6 V), with CPU running at a frequency up to 32 MHz
- Range 2 (full V_{DD} range), with a maximum CPU frequency of 16 MHz
- Range 3 (full V_{DD} range), with a maximum CPU frequency limited to 4.2 MHz.



Appendix E STM32Cube embedded software packages

Along with STM32CubeMX C code generator, embedded software packages are part of STM32Cube initiative (refer to *DB2164 databrief*): these packages include a low-level hardware abstraction layer (HAL) that covers the microcontroller hardware, together with an extensive set of examples running on STMicroelectronics boards (see *Figure 228*). This set of components is highly portable across the STM32 series. The packages are fully compatible with STM32CubeMX generated C code.

(Demo builder Framework) Demonstration			ration	demons	tration	
Demo						
	Middle	ware examples				
TCP/IP IwIP stack + Polar SSL Middleware	USB Host&Device library	Graphical Library STEmWin	FAT Filesystem FATFS	Enhanced NAND Driver	RTOS «RTOS	Utilities (time, string, file
	НА	Lexamples			Ľ.	
						CMSI
Hardy	vare Abstraction Layer A	PI	Evalbo	ard drivers		
Hardy	vare Abstraction Layer A	PI	Evalbo	ard drivers		

Figure 228. STM32Cube Embedded Software package

Note: STM32CubeF0, STM32CubeF1, STM32CubeF2, STM32CubeF3, STM32CubeF4, STM32CubeL0 and STM32CubeL1 embedded software packages are available on st.com. They are based on STM32Cube release v1.1 (other series will be introduced progressively) and include the embedded software libraries used by STM32CubeMX for initialization C code generation.

The user should use STM32CubeMX to generate the initialization C code and the examples provided in the package to get started with STM32 application development.



12 Revision history

Date	Revision	STM32CubeMX release number	Changes
17-Feb-2014	1	4.1	Initial release.
04-Apr-2014 24-Apr-2014			Added support for STM32CubeF2 and STM32F2 series in cover page, Section 2.2: Key features, Section 4.12.1: Peripherals and Middleware Configuration window, and Appendix E: STM32Cube embedded software packages.
	2	4.2	Updated Section 6.1: Creating a new STM32CubeMX Project, Section 6.2: Configuring the MCU pinout, Section 6.6: Configuring the MCU initialization parameters.
			Section "Generating GPIO initialization C code move to Section 8: Tutorial 3- Generating GPIO initialization C code (STM32F1 series only) and content updated.
			Added Section 11.4: Why do I get the error "Java 7 update 45' when installing 'Java 7 update 45' or a more recent version of the JRE?.
			Added support for STM32CubeL0 and STM32L0 series in cover page, Section 2.2: Key features, Section 2.3: Rules and limitations and Section 4.12.1: Peripherals and Middleware Configuration window
		4.3	Added board selection in <i>Table 3: File menu functions</i> , Section 4.4.3: Pinout menu and Section 4.2: New project window. Updated <i>Table 5: Pinout menu</i> .
	3		Updated <i>Figure 95: Power Consumption Calculator default view</i> and added battery selection in <i>Section 4.14.1: Building a power consumption sequence</i> .
			Updated note in Section 4.14: Power Consumption Calculator view Updated Section 6.1: Creating a new STM32CubeMX Project.
			Added Section 11.5: Why does the RTC multiplexer remain inactive on the Clock tree view?, Section 11.6: How can I select LSE and HSE as clock source and change the frequency?, and Section 11.7: Why STM32CubeMX does not allow me to configure PC13, PC14, PC15 and PI8 as outputs when one of them is already configured as an output?.

Table 20. Document revision history


Date	Revision	STM32CubeMX release number	Changes
19-jun-2014	4	4.4	Added support for STM32CubeF0, STM32CubeF3, STM32F0 and STM32F3 series in cover page, <i>Section 2.2: Key features</i> , <i>Section 2.3: Rules and limitations</i> ,
			Added board selection capability and pin locking capability in Section 2.2: Key features, Table 2: Welcome page shortcuts, Section 4.2: New project window, Section 4.4: Toolbar and menus, Section 4.7: Set unused / Reset used GPIOs windows, Section 4.8: Project Settings window, and Section 4.11: Pinout view. Added Section 4.11.5: Pinning and labeling signals on pins.
			Updated Section 4.12: Configuration view and Section 4.13: Clock tree configuration view and Section 4.14: Power Consumption Calculator view.
			Updated Figure 23: STM32CubeMX Main window upon MCU selection, Figure 38: Project Settings window, Figure 47: About window, Figure 48: STM32CubeMX Pinout view, Figure 49: Chip view, Figure 95: Power Consumption Calculator default view, Figure 96: Battery selection, Figure 97: Building a power consumption sequence, Figure 99: Power consumption sequence: new step default view, Figure 107: Power Consumption Calculator view after sequence building, Figure 108: Sequence table management functions, Figure 88: PCC Edit Step window, Figure 83: Power consumption sequence: new step configured (STM32F4 example), Figure 105: ADC selected in Pinout view, Figure 106: Power Consumption Calculator Step configuration window: ADC enabled using import pinout, Figure 110: Description of the Results area, Figure 111: Peripheral power consumption tooltip, Figure 179: Power Consumption Calculation example, Figure 155: Sequence table and Figure 156: Power Consumption Calculation results.
			Updated Figure 61: STM32CubeMX Configuration view and Figure 39: STM32CubeMX Configuration view - STM32F1 series titles. Added STM32L1 in Section 4.14: Power Consumption Calculator
			view. Removed Figure Add a new step using the PCC panel from Section 8.1.1: Adding a step. Removed Figure Add a new step to the sequence from Section 4.14.2: Configuring a step in the power sequence.
			Updated Section 8.2: Reviewing results.
			Updated appendix <i>B.3.4: FatFs</i> and <i>Appendix D: STM32</i> <i>microcontrollers power consumption parameters</i> . Added Appendix <i>D.1.3: STM32L0 series</i> and <i>D.2.3: STM32L0 series feature 3</i> <i>VCORE ranges</i> .

Table 20. Document revision history (continued)



Date	Revision	STM32CubeMX release number	Changes
			Added support for STM32CubeL1 series in cover page, Section 2.2: Key features, Section 2.3: Rules and limitations,
			Updated Section 3.2.3: Uninstalling STM32CubeMX standalone version.
			Added off-line updates in <i>Section 3.5: Getting STM32Cube updates</i> , modified <i>Figure 16: New library Manager window</i> , and <i>Section 3.5.2: Downloading new libraries</i> .
			Updated Section 4: STM32CubeMX User Interface introduction, Table 2: Welcome page shortcuts and Section 4.2: New project window.
			Added Figure 22: New Project window - board selector.
			Updated Figure 43: Project Settings Code Generator.
			Modified step 3 in Section 4.8: Project Settings window.
19-Sep-2014	5	4.5	Updated Figure 39: STM32CubeMX Configuration view - STM32F1 series.
			Added STM32L1 in Section 4.12.1: Peripherals and Middleware Configuration window.
			Updated Figure 73: GPIO Configuration window - GPIO selection; Section 4.12.3: GPIO Configuration window and Figure 79: DMA MemToMem configuration.
			Updated introduction of Section 4.13: Clock tree configuration view. Updated Section 4.13.1: Clock tree configuration functions and Section 4.13.2: Recommendations, Section 4.14: Power
			Consumption Calculator view, Figure 99: Power consumption sequence: new step default view, Figure 107: Power Consumption Calculator view after sequence building, Figure 83: Power
			consumption sequence: new step configured (STM32F4 example), and Figure 106: Power Consumption Calculator Step configuration window: ADC enabled using import pipout Added Figure 109
			Power Consumption: Peripherals Consumption Chart and updated Figure 111: Peripheral power consumption tooltip. Updated Section 4 14 4: Power sequence step parameters clossary
			Updated Section 5: STM32CubeMX C Code generation overview.
			Updated Section 6.1: Creating a new STM32CubeMX Project and Section 6.2: Configuring the MCU pinout.
			Added Section 7: Tutorial 2 - Example of FatFs on an SD card using STM32429I-EVAL evaluation board and updated Section 8: Tutorial 3- Generating GPIO initialization C code (STM32F1 series only).
			Updated Section 4.14.2: Configuring a step in the power sequence.

Table 20. Document revision history (continued)



Date	Revision	STM32CubeMX release number	Changes
			Complete project generation, power consumption calculation and clock tree configuration now available on all STM32 series.
			Updated Section 2.2: Key features and Section 2.3: Rules and limitations.
			Updated Eclipse IDEs in Section 3.1.3: Software requirements.
			Updated Figure 12: Updater Settings window, Figure 16: New library Manager window and Figure 22: New Project window - board selector, Updated Section 4.8: Project Settings window and Section 4.9: Update Manager windows.
			Updated Figure 47: About window.
			Removed Figure STM32CubeMX Configuration view - STM32F1 series.
		4.6	Updated Table 9: STM32CubeMX Chip view - Icons and color scheme.
	6		Updated Section 4.12.1: Peripherals and Middleware Configuration window.
			Updated Figure 77: Adding a new DMA request and Figure 79: DMA MemToMem configuration.
			Updated Section 4.13.1: Clock tree configuration functions.
10 Jan 2015			Updated Figure 96: Battery selection, Figure 97: Building a power consumption sequence, Figure 88: PCC Edit Step window.
19-Jan-2015			Added Section 5.3: Custom code generation.
			Updated Figure 132: Clock tree view and Figure 137: Configuration view.
			Updated peripheral configuration sequence and <i>Figure 139:</i> <i>Timer 3 configuration window</i> in <i>Section 6.6.2: Configuring the</i> <i>peripherals</i> .
			Removed Tutorial 3: Generating GPIO initialization C code (STM32F1 series only).
			Updated Figure 143: GPIO mode configuration.
			Updated Figure 179: Power Consumption Calculation example and Figure 155: Sequence table.
			Updated Appendix A.1: Block consistency, A.2: Block inter-
			dependency and A.3: One block = one peripheral mode.
			Appendix A.4: Block remapping (STM32F10x only): updated Section : Example .
			Appendix A.6: Block shifting (only for STM32F10x and when "Keep Current Signals placement" is unchecked): updated Section : Example
			Updated Appendix A.8: Mapping a function individually .
			Updated Appendix <i>B.3.1: Overview</i> .
			Updated Appendix D.1.3: STM32L0 series.

Table 20. Document revision history (continued)



Date	Revision	STM32CubeMX release number	Changes	
			Section 2.2: Key features: removed Pinout initialization C code generation for STM32F1 series from; updated Complete project generation. Updated Figure 16: New library Manager window, Figure 22: New	
			Project window - board selector. Updated IDE list in Section 4.8: Project Settings window and modified Figure 38: Project Settings window	
			Updated Section 4.13.1: Clock tree configuration functions. Updated Figure 91: STM32F429xx Clock Tree configuration view.	
19-Mar-2015	7	4.7	Section 4.14: Power Consumption Calculator view: added transition checker option. Updated Figure 95: Power Consumption Calculator default view, Figure 96: Battery selection and Figure 97: Building a power consumption sequence. Added Figure 101: Enabling the transition checker option on an already configured sequence - all transitions valid, Figure 102: Enabling the transition checker option on an already configured sequence - at least one transition invalid and Figure 103: Transition checker option -show log. Updated Figure 107: Power Consumption Calculator view after sequence building. Updated Section : Managing sequence steps, Section : Managing the whole sequence (load, save and compare). Updated Figure 88: PCC Edit Step window and Figure 110: Description of the Results area. Updated Figure 179: Power Consumption Calculation example, Figure 155: Sequence table, Figure 156: Power Consumption Calculation results and Figure 158: Power consumption results - IP consumption chart.	
28-May-2015	8	4 8	Added Section 3.2.2: Installing STM32CubeMX from command line	
20 May 2010	0	4.0	and Section 3.4.2: Running STM32CubeMX in command-line mode.	
09-Jul-2015	9	4.9	 Added STEM32F7 and STM32L4 microcontroller series. Added Import project feature. Added Import function in Table 3: File menu functions. Added Section 4.6: Import Project window. Updated Figure 99: Power consumption sequence: new step default view, Figure 88: PCC Edit Step window, Figure 83: Power consumption sequence: new step configured (STM32F4 example), Figure 106: Power Consumption Calculator Step configuration window: ADC enabled using import pinout and Figure 111: Peripheral power consumption tooltip. Updated command line to run STM32CubeMX in Section 3.4.2: Running STM32CubeMX in command-line mode. Updated note in Section 4.12: Configuration view. Added new clock tree configuration functions in Section 4.13.1. Updated Figure 145: FatFs disabled. Modified code example in Appendix B.1: STM32CubeMX generated C code and user sections. Updated Appendix B.3.1: Overview. Updated generated .h files in Appendix B.3.4: FatFs. 	

Table 20.	Document revision	history	(continued))
	Document revision	motory	(continuea)	1



Date	Revision	STM32CubeMX release number	Changes
27-Aug-2015	10	4.10	Replace UM1742 by UM1940 in Section : Introduction. Updated command line to run STM32CubeMX in command-line mode in Section 3.4.2: Running STM32CubeMX in command-line mode. Modified Table 1: Command line summary. Updated board selection in Section 4.2: New project window. Updated Section 4.12: Configuration view overview. Updated Section 4.12.1: Peripherals and Middleware Configuration window, Section 4.12.3: GPIO Configuration window and Section 4.12.4: DMA Configuration window. Added Section 4.12.2: User Constants configuration window. Updated Section 4.13: Clock tree configuration view and added reserve path. Updated Section 6.1: Creating a new STM32CubeMX Project, Section 6.5: Configuring the MCU Clock tree, Section 6.6: Configuring the MCU initialization parameters, Section 6.7.2: Downloading firmware package and generating the C code, Section 6.8: Building and updating the C code project. Added Section 6.9: Switching to another MCU. Updated Section 7: Tutorial 2 - Example of FatFs on an SD card using STM32429I-EVAL evaluation board and replaced
16-Oct-2015	11	4.11	STM32F429I-EVAL by STM32429I-EVAL. Updated Figure 16: New library Manager window and Section 3.5.5: Checking for updates. Character string constant supported in Section 4.12.2: User Constants configuration window. Updated Section 4.13: Clock tree configuration view. Updated Section 4.14: Power Consumption Calculator view. Modified Figure 179: Power Consumption Calculation example. Updated Section 8: Tutorial 3 - Using the Power Consumption Calculator to optimize the embedded application consumption and more. Added Eclipse Mars in Section 3.1.3: Software requirements
03-Dec-2015	12	4.12	Code generation options now supported by the Project settings menu. Updated Section 3.1.3: Software requirements. Added project settings in Section 4.6: Import Project window. Updated Figure 30: Automatic project import; modified Manual project import step and updated Figure 31: Manual project import and Figure 32: Import Project menu - Try import with errors; modified third step of the import sequence. Updated Figure 92: Clock Tree configuration view with errors. Added mxconstants.h in Section 5.1: STM32Cube code generation using only HAL drivers (default mode). Updated Figure 179: Power Consumption Calculation example to Figure 188: Step 10 optimization. Updated Figure 189: Power sequence results after optimizations.

Table 20. Document revision history (continued)



Date	Revision	STM32CubeMX release number	Changes
Date 03-Feb-2016	Revision 13	STM32CubeMX release number	Changes Updated Section 2.2: Key features: Information related to loc files. Clock tree configuration Automatic updates of STM32CubeMX and STM32Cube. Updated limitation related to STM32CubeMX C code generation in Section 2.3: Rules and limitations. Added Linux in Section 3.1.1: Supported operating systems and architectures. Updated Java Run Time Environment release number in Section 3.1.3: Software requirements. Updated Section 3.2.1: Installing STM32CubeMX standalone version, Section 3.2.3: Uninstalling STM32CubeMX standalone version and Section 3.2.1: Downloading STM32CubeMX plug-in installation package. Updated Section 3.4.1: Running STM32CubeMX as standalone application. Updated Section 4.8: Project Settings window and Section 4.9: Update Manager windows. Updated Section 4.11.5: Pinning and labeling signals on pins. Added Section 4.11.6: Setting HAL timebase source Updated Figure 62: Configuration window tabs for GPIO, DMA and NVIC settings (STM32F4 series). Added note related to GPIO configuration in output mode in Section 4.12.3: GPIO Configuration window; updated Figure 73: GPIO Configuration window; updated Figure 95: Power Consumption Calculator default view, Figure 97: Building a power consumption sequence, Figure 98: Step management functions, Figure 101: Enabling the transition checker option on an already configured sequence - at least one transition invalid. Added import pinout button icon in Section : Importing pinout. Added Section : Selecting/deselecting all peripherals. Modified Fi
			Figure 102: Enabling the transition checker option on an already configured sequence - at least one transition invalid. Added import pinout button icon in Section : Importing pinout. Added Section : Selecting/deselecting all peripherals. Modified Figure 107: Power Consumption Calculator view after sequence building. Updated Section : Managing the whole sequence (load, save and compare). Updated Figure 110: Description of the Results area and Figure 111: Peripheral power consumption tooltin
			Updated Figure 179: Power Consumption Calculation example and Figure 181: Sequence table.
			Updated Section 5.3: Custom code generation. Updated Figure 124: Pinout view with MCUs selection and Figure 125: Pinout view without MCUs selection window in Section 6.1: Creating a new STM32CubeMX Project.
			Updated Section 6.6.2: Configuring the peripherals . Updated Figure 151: Project Settings and toolchain choice and Figure 152: Project Settings menu - Code Generator tab in Section 6.7.1: Setting project options, and Figure 153: Missing firmware package warning message in Section 6.7.2: Downloading firmware package and generating the C code.

Table 20. Document revision history (continued
--



Date	Revision	STM32CubeMX release number	Changes
15-Mar-2016	14	4.14	 Upgraded STM32CubeMX released number to 4.14.0. Added import of previously saved projects and generation of user files from templates in <i>Section 2.2: Key features</i>. Added MacOS in <i>Section 3.1.1: Supported operating systems and architectures, Section 3.2.1: Installing STM32CubeMX standalone version, Section 3.2.3: Uninstalling STM32CubeMX plug-in from Eclipse IDE.</i> Added command lines allowing the generation of user files from templates in <i>Section 3.4.2: Running STM32CubeMX in command-line mode</i>. Updated new library installation sequence in <i>Section 3.5.1: Updater configuration</i>. Updated Figure 26: Pinout menus (Pinout tab selected) and Figure 27: Pinout menus (Pinout tab not selected) in <i>Section 4.4.3: Pinout menu</i>. Modified Table 6: Window menu. Updated Figure 58: NVIC settings window and Section 4.8.1: Project tab. Updated Figure 58: NVIC settings when using SysTick as HAL timebase, no FreeRTOS and Figure 59: NVIC settings when using FreeRTOS and SysTick as HAL timebase source. Updated Figure 64: User Constants window and Figure 65: Extract of the generated main.h file in Section 4.12.2: User Constants configuration window. Section 4.12.3: GPIO Configuration window: updated Figure 74: GPIO Configuration window - displaying GPIO settings, Figure 75: GPIO configuration window - displaying GPIO settings, Figure 75: GPIO configuration window - displaying GPIO settings, Figure 75: GPIO configuration window - displaying GPIO settings, Figure 75: GPIO configuration. Updated Section 4.12.5: NVIC Configuration window.
18-May-2016	15	4.15	Import project function is no more limited to MCUs of the same series (see Section 2.2: Key features, Section 4.4.1: File menu and Section 4.6: Import Project window). Updated command lines in Section 3.4.2: Running STM32CubeMX in command-line mode. Table 1: Command line summary: modified all examples related to config comands as well as set dest_path <pre>path> example.</pre> Added caution note for Load Project menu in Table 3: File menu functions. Updated Generate Code menu description in Table 4: Project menu. Updated Set unused GPIOs menu in Table 5: Pinout menu. Added case where FreeRTOS in enabled in Section : Enabling interruptions using the NVIC tab view. Added Section 4.12.6: FreeRTOS middleware configuration view. Updated Appendix B.3.5: FreeRTOS and B.3.6: LwIP .



Date	Revision	STM32CubeMX release number	Changes	
23-Sep-2016	16	4.17	 Replaced <i>mxconstants.h</i> by <i>main.h</i> in the whole document. Updated <i>Introduction, Section 3.1.1:</i> Supported operating systems and architectures and Section 3.1.3: Software requirements. Added Section 3.5.3: Downloading new library patches. Updated Load project description in Table 2: Welcome page shortcuts. Updated Clear Pinouts function in Table 5: Pinout menu. Updated Section 4.8.3: Advanced Settings tab to add Low Layer driver. Added No check and Decimal and hexadecimal check options in Table 11: Peripheral and Middleware Configuration window buttons and tooltips. Updated Figure 74: GPIO Configuration window - displaying GPIO settings. Replaced PCC by Power Consumption Calculator in the whole document. Added Section 5.2: STM32Cube code generation using Low Layer driver; yupdated Table 18: LL versus HAL: STM32CubeMX generated functions and function calls. Updated Figure 210: Pinout view - Enabling the RTC. Added Section 9: Tutorial 4 - Example of UART communications with a STM32L053xx Nucleo board. Added correspondence between STM32CubeMX release number and document revision. 	
21-Nov-2016	17	4.18	 Removed Windows XP and added Windows 10 in Section 3.1.3: Software requirements. Updated Section 3.2.3: Uninstalling STM32CubeMX standalone version. Added setDriver command line in Table 1: Command line summary. Added List pinout compatible MCUs feature: Updated Table 5: Pinout menu. Added Section 10: Tutorial 5: exporting current project configuration to a compatible MCU Added Firmware location selection option in Section 4.8.1: Project tab and Figure 38: Project Settings window. Added Restore Default feature: Updated Table 11: Peripheral and Middleware Configuration window buttons and tooltips Updated Figure 66: Using constants for peripheral parameter settings. 	

Table 20. Document revision history (continued)



IMPORTANT NOTICE - PLEASE READ CAREFULLY

STMicroelectronics NV and its subsidiaries ("ST") reserve the right to make changes, corrections, enhancements, modifications, and improvements to ST products and/or to this document at any time without notice. Purchasers should obtain the latest relevant information on ST products before placing orders. ST products are sold pursuant to ST's terms and conditions of sale in place at the time of order acknowledgement.

Purchasers are solely responsible for the choice, selection, and use of ST products and ST assumes no liability for application assistance or the design of Purchasers' products.

No license, express or implied, to any intellectual property right is granted by ST herein.

Resale of ST products with provisions different from the information set forth herein shall void any warranty granted by ST for such product.

ST and the ST logo are trademarks of ST. All other product or service names are the property of their respective owners.

Information in this document supersedes and replaces information previously supplied in any prior versions of this document.

© 2016 STMicroelectronics - All rights reserved



DocID025776 Rev 17